Welcome to the world-wide family of Volvo owners. We trust that you will enjoy many years of safe driving in your Volvo, an automobile designed with your safety and comfort in mind. We encourage you to familiarize yourself with the equipment descriptions and operating instructions in this manual. We also urge you and your passengers to wear seat belts at all times in this (or any other) vehicle. And, of course, please do not operate a vehicle if you may be affected by alcohol, medication or any impairment that could hinder your ability to drive.

Your Volvo is designed to meet all applicable safety and emission standards. For further information please contact your retailer, or:

**In the USA:** Volvo Cars of North America, LLC Customer Care Center  
P.O. Box 914  
Rockleigh, New Jersey 07647-0914  
1-800-458-1552  
www.volvocars.us

**In Canada:** Volvo Cars of Canada Corp  
National Customer Service  
175 Gordon Baker Road  
North York, Ontario M2H 2N7  
1-800-663-8255  
www.volvocanada.com

2008 © Volvo Car Corporation, All rights reserved.
## Contents

### 00 Introduction
- General information ........................................ 10
- Volvo and the environment ............................. 12
- Important warnings ........................................ 13

### 01 Safety
- Occupant safety ........................................... 16
- Seat belts .................................................. 18
- Supplemental Restraint System ...................... 21
- Occupant Weight Sensor (OWS) ..................... 26
- Side impact protection airbags ....................... 29
- Volvo Inflatable Curtain (VIC) ....................... 30
- Whiplash Protection System ......................... 31
- Crash mode ............................................... 33
- Child safety ................................................ 34
- Child restraint systems .................................. 36
- Infant seats ............................................... 37
- Convertible seats ....................................... 39
- Booster cushions ....................................... 41
- ISOFIX lower anchors .................................. 42
- Top tether anchors ...................................... 44
- Child restraint registration and recalls ........... 45

### 02 Instruments and controls
- Instrument overview ..................................... 48
- Instrument panel ......................................... 51
- Indicator and warning symbols ..................... 53
- Symbols – instrument panel .......................... 55
- Information display ...................................... 58
- 12-volt sockets .......................................... 60
- Lighting panel ............................................ 61
- Left-side steering wheel lever ....................... 64
- Trip computer ............................................. 66
- Cruise control (option) ................................. 68
- Right-side steering wheel lever ..................... 70
- Steering wheel adjustment, Hazard warning flashers ......................................................... 73
- Parking brake ............................................. 74
- Power windows .......................................... 75
- Mirrors ....................................................... 77
- Power moonroof (option) .............................. 80
- Personal settings ......................................... 82
- HomeLink® Wireless Control System (option) ......................................................... 85
Contents

03 Climate
  General information ................................. 90
  Air vents ............................................. 92
  Manual climate control ............................ 93
  Electronic Climate Control (ECC) – option .......... 96
  Air distribution ...................................... 99

04 Interior
  Front seats .......................................... 102
  Interior lighting ..................................... 105
  Storage compartments .............................. 107
  Rear seat ............................................ 111
  Cargo area ............................................ 113

05 Locks and alarm
  Remote control and key blade ................... 118
  Keyless drive (option as available) ............. 123
  Locking and unlocking ............................. 127
  Child safety locks .................................. 129
  Alarm (option) ....................................... 130
# Contents

## 06 Starting and driving
- General information ................................ 136
- Fuel requirements ................................ 140
- Ignition switch ..................................... 143
- Starting the vehicle ................................ 144
- Starting the vehicle with keyless drive (option as available) ................................ 146
- Manual transmission, 5-speed (certain markets only)............................................ 147
- Manual transmission, 6-speed (certain markets only)............................................ 148
- Automatic transmission (option) ................. 149
- Shiftlock override ................................... 151
- All Wheel Drive (option) .......................... 152
- Brake system ....................................... 153
- Stability system ...................................... 155
- Towing ................................................. 157
- Jump starting ....................................... 159
- Towing a trailer ...................................... 160
- Detachable trailer hitch ............................ 162
- Transporting loads .................................. 163
- Blind Spot Information System (BLIS)–option ...................................................... 164
- Park assist (Option/accessory) .................... 168

## 07 Wheels and tires
- General information ................................ 174
- Tire inflation ......................................... 176
- Inflation pressure—U.S. models .............. 178
- Inflation pressure—Canadian models ....... 179
- Tire designations .................................... 180
- Glossary of tire terminology .................... 182
- Vehicle loading ..................................... 183
- Uniform tire quality gradings ................. 185
- Snow chains, snow tires, studded tires .. 186
- Temporary spare ................................... 187
- Wheel nuts .......................................... 188
- Tire rotation ........................................ 189
- Changing a wheel .................................. 190
- Tire Sealing System ............................... 192
- Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) 197

## 08 Car care
- Washing and cleaning the car ................. 202
- Paint touch up ..................................... 206
## 09 Maintenance and servicing

- Volvo maintenance ........................................... 210
- Maintaining your car ........................................ 212
- Hood ............................................................. 214
- Engine compartment ........................................ 215
- Engine oil ....................................................... 216
- Fluids .............................................................. 218
- Wiper blades .................................................... 220
- Battery ............................................................ 221
- Replacing bulbs ............................................... 223
- Fuses ............................................................... 230

## 10 Audio

- Audio functions .................................................. 240
- Radio functions .................................................. 244
- CD player/CD changer ........................................ 249
- Audio menu ....................................................... 253
- Bluetooth® hands-free connection ...................... 254

## 11 Specifications

- Label information ................................................ 262
- Dimensions and weights ..................................... 264
- Fuel, oils, and fluids ......................................... 267
- Engine oil .......................................................... 269
- Engine specifications ......................................... 270
- Electrical system ............................................... 272
- Three-way catalytic converter ............................ 274
- Volvo programs .................................................. 275
12 Index
Index ..................................................................... 276
Introduction

General information

Shiftlock (automatic transmission)
When your car is parked, the gear selector is locked in the Park (P) position. To release the selector from this position, turn the ignition key to position II (or start the engine), depress the brake pedal, press the button on the front side of the gear selector and move the selector from Park (P).

Keylock (automatic transmission)
When the ignition is switched off, the gear selector must be in the Park (P) position before the key can be removed from the ignition switch.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)
The ABS system in your car performs a self-diagnostic test when the vehicle first reaches the speed of approximately 12 mph (20 km/h). The brake pedal will pulsate several times and a sound may be audible from the ABS control module. This is normal.

Fuel filler door
Press the button on the light switch panel when the car is at a standstill to open the fuel filler door.

Fuel filler cap
After refueling, close the fuel filler cap by turning it clockwise until it clicks into place. If this cap is not closed tightly or if the engine is running when the car is refueled, the Malfunction Indicator Lamp ("Check Engine" light) may indicate a fault.

About this manual
- Before you operate your vehicle for the first time, please familiarize yourself with the new-engine oil consumption information, see page 216. You should also be familiar with the information found in the chapters "Instruments and controls", and "Starting and driving".
- Information contained in the balance of the manual is extremely useful and should be read after operating the vehicle for the first time.
- The manual is structured so that it can be used for reference. For this reason, it should be kept in the vehicle for ready access.

NOTE
- Optional or accessory equipment described in this manual may not be available in all countries or markets. Please note that some vehicles may be equipped differently, depending on special legal requirements.
- All information, illustrations and specifications contained in this manual are based on the latest product information available at the time of publication.
- Volvo reserves the right to make model changes at any time, or to change specifications or design without notice and without incurring obligation.
- Do not export your Volvo to another country before investigating that country’s applicable safety and emission control requirements. In some cases it may be difficult or impossible to comply with these requirements. Modifications to the emission control system(s) may render your Volvo not certifiable for legal operation in the U.S., Canada and other countries.
**WARNING**

If your vehicle is involved in an accident, unseen damage may affect its driveability and safety.

**WARNING**

**CALIFORNIA proposition 65**

Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and certain vehicle components contain or emit chemicals known to the state of California to cause cancer, and birth defects or other reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the state of California to cause cancer, and birth defects or other reproductive harm.
Volvo is committed to the well being of its customers. As a natural part of this commitment, we care about the environment in which we all live. Caring for the environment means an everyday involvement in reducing our environmental impact. Volvo’s environmental activities are based on a holistic view, which means we consider the overall environmental impact of a product throughout its complete life cycle. In this context, design, production, product use, and recycling are all important considerations. In production, Volvo has partly or completely phased out several chemicals including CFCs, lead chromates, asbestos, and cadmium; and reduced the number of chemicals used in our plants 50% since 1991.

Volvo was the first in the world to introduce into production a three-way catalytic converter with a Lambda sensor, now called the heated oxygen sensor, in 1976. The current version of this highly efficient system reduces emissions of harmful substances (CO, HC, NOx) from the exhaust pipe by approximately 95 – 99% and the search to eliminate the remaining emissions continues. Volvo is the only automobile manufacturer to offer CFC-free retrofit kits for the air conditioning system of all models as far back as the 1975 model 240. Advanced electronic engine controls and cleaner fuels are bringing us closer to our goal. After Volvo vehicles and parts have fulfilled their use, recycling is the next critical step in completing the life cycle. The metal content is about 75% of the total weight of a vehicle, which makes the vehicle among the most recycled industrial products. In order to have efficient and well-controlled recycling, dismantling information is available for all Volvo models. For Volvo, all homogeneous plastic parts weighing more than 3.4 oz. (100 grams) are marked with international symbols that indicate how the component is to be sorted for recycling. In addition to continuous environmental refinement of conventional gasoline-powered internal combustion engines, Volvo is actively looking at advanced technology alternative-fuel vehicles.

When you drive a Volvo, you become our partner in the work to lessen the car’s impact on the environment. To reduce your vehicle’s environmental impact, you can:

- Maintain proper air pressure in your tires. Tests have shown decreased fuel economy with improperly inflated tires.
- Follow the recommended maintenance schedule in your Warranty and Service Records Information booklet.
- Drive at a constant speed whenever possible.
- See a trained and qualified Volvo service technician as soon as possible for inspection if the check engine (malfunction indicator) light illuminates, or stays on after the vehicle has started.
- Properly dispose of any vehicle-related waste such as used motor oil, used batteries, brake pads, etc.
- When cleaning your vehicle, please use genuine Volvo car care products. All Volvo car care products are formulated to be environmentally friendly.

For additional information regarding the environmental activities in which Volvo Cars of North America, LLC and Volvo Car Corporation are involved, visit our Internet home page at: http://www.volvocars.us.

**WARNING**

Certain components of this vehicle such as air bag modules, seat belt pretensioners, adaptive steering columns, and button cell batteries may contain Perchlorate material. Special handling may apply for service or vehicle end of life disposal.

See [www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate](http://www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate).
Accessory Installation

- We strongly recommend that Volvo owners install only genuine, Volvo-approved accessories, and that accessory installations be performed only by a trained and qualified Volvo service technician.
- Genuine Volvo accessories are tested to ensure compatibility with the performance, safety, and emission systems in your vehicle. Additionally, a trained and qualified Volvo service technician knows where accessories may and may not be safely installed in your Volvo. In all cases, please consult a trained and qualified Volvo service technician before installing any accessory in or on your vehicle.
- Accessories that have not been approved by Volvo may or may not be specifically tested for compatibility with your vehicle. Additionally, an inexperienced installer may not be familiar with some of your vehicle’s systems.
- Any of your vehicle’s performance and safety systems could be adversely affected if you install accessories that Volvo has not tested, or if you allow accessories to be installed by someone unfamiliar with your vehicle.
- Damage caused by unapproved or improperly installed accessories may not be covered by your new vehicle warranty. See your Warranty and Service Records Information booklet for more warranty information. Volvo assumes no responsibility for death, injury, or expenses that may result from the installation of nongenuine accessories.

Driver distraction

- Driver distraction results from driver activities that are not directly related to controlling the vehicle in the driving environment. Your new Volvo is, or can be, equipped with many feature-rich entertainment and communication systems. These include hands-free cellular telephones, navigation systems, and multipurpose audio systems. You may also own other portable electronic devices for your own convenience. When used properly and safely, they enrich the driving experience. Improperly used, any of these could cause a distraction.
- For all of these systems, we want to provide the following warning that reflects the strong Volvo concern for your safety:
- Never use these devices or any feature of your vehicle in a way that distracts you from the task of driving safely. Distraction can lead to a serious accident. In addition to this general warning, we offer the following guidance regarding specific newer features that may be found in your vehicle:
- Never use a hand-held cellular telephone while driving. Some jurisdictions prohibit cellular telephone use by a driver while the vehicle is moving.
- If your vehicle is equipped with a navigation system, set and make changes to your travel itinerary only with the vehicle parked.
- Never program your audio system while the vehicle is moving. Program radio presets with the vehicle parked, and use your programmed presets to make radio use quicker and simpler.
- Never use portable computers or personal digital assistants while the vehicle is moving.

A driver has a responsibility to do everything possible to ensure his or her own safety and the safety of passengers in the vehicle and others sharing the roadway. Avoiding distractions is part of that responsibility.
Occupant safety................................................................. 16
Seat belts............................................................................. 18
Supplemental Restraint System......................................... 21
Occupant Weight Sensor (OWS)......................................... 26
Side impact protection airbags......................................... 29
Volvo Inflatable Curtain (VIC)........................................... 30
Whiplash Protection System.............................................. 31
Crash mode....................................................................... 33
Child safety........................................................................ 34
Child restraint systems...................................................... 36
Infant seats....................................................................... 37
Convertible seats............................................................... 39
Booster cushions............................................................... 41
ISOFIX lower anchors....................................................... 42
Top tether anchors............................................................. 44
Child restraint registration and recalls............................ 45
Volvo's concern for safety
Safety is Volvo's cornerstone. Our concern dates back to 1927 when the first Volvo rolled off the production line. Three-point seat belts (a Volvo invention), safety cages, and energy-absorbing impact zones were designed into Volvo cars long before it was fashionable or required by government regulation.

We will not compromise our commitment to safety. We continue to seek out new safety features and to refine those already in our cars. You can help. We would appreciate hearing your suggestions about improving automobile safety. We also want to know if you ever have a safety concern with your car. Call us in the U.S. at: 1-800-458-1552 or in Canada at: 1-800-663-8255.

Reporting safety defects in the U.S.
If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Volvo Cars of North America, LLC. If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign.

However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your retailer, or Volvo Cars of North America, LLC.

To contact NHTSA, you may either call the Auto Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153) or write to: NHTSA, U.S. Department of Transportation, Washington D.C. 20590.

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from:
http://www.safercar.gov

Volvo strongly recommends that if your vehicle is covered under a service campaign, safety or emission recall or similar action, it should be completed as soon as possible. Please check with your local retailer or Volvo Cars of North America, LLC if your vehicle is covered under these conditions.

NHTSA can be reached at:
Internet:
http://www.nhtsa.gov
Telephone:
Reporting safety defects in Canada
If you believe your vehicle has a defect that could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform Transport Canada in addition to notifying Volvo Cars of Canada Corp.

To contact Transport Canada, call (800) 333-0510, or (613) 993-9851 if you are calling from the Ottawa region.
Using seat belts

Seat belts should always be worn by all occupants of your vehicle. Children should be properly restrained, using an infant, car, or booster seat determined by age, weight and height.

Volvo also believes no child should sit in the front seat of a vehicle.

Most states and provinces make it mandatory for occupants of a vehicle to use seat belts.

Seat belt pretensioners

The outboard seat belts are equipped with pretensioners that reduce slack in the belts. These pretensioners are triggered in situations where the front or side impact airbags deploy, and in certain impacts from the rear. The front seat belts also include a tension reducing device which, in the event of a collision, limits the peak forces exerted by the seat belt on the occupant.

Buckling a seat belt

Pull the belt out far enough to insert the latch plate into the receptacle until a distinct click is heard. The seat belt retractor is normally “unlocked” and you can move freely, provided that the shoulder belt is not pulled out too far.

The retractor will lock up as follows:

- if the belt is pulled out rapidly
- during braking and acceleration
- if the vehicle is leaning excessively
- when driving in turns

When wearing the seat belt remember:

- The belt should not be twisted or turned.
- The lap section of the belt must be positioned low on the hips (not pressing against the abdomen).
- Make sure that the shoulder belt is rolled up into its retractor and that the shoulder and lap belts are taut.

Unbuckling the seat belt

- To remove the seat belt, press the red section on the seat belt receptacle. Before exiting the vehicle, check that the seat belt retracts fully after being unbuckled. If necessary, guide the belt back into the retractor slot.

WARNING

Never use a seat belt for more than one occupant. Never wear the shoulder portion of the belt under the arm, behind the back or otherwise out of position. Such use could cause injury in the event of an accident. As seat belts lose much of their strength when exposed to violent stretching, they should be replaced after any collision, even if they appear to be undamaged.
**WARNING**

- Never repair the belt yourself; have this work done by a trained and qualified Volvo service technician only.
- Any device used to induce slack into the shoulder belt portion of the three-point belt system will have a detrimental effect on the amount of protection available to you in the event of a collision.
- The seat back should not be tilted too far back. The shoulder belt must be taut in order to function properly.
- Do not use child safety seats or child booster cushions/backrests in the front passenger's seat. We also recommend that children who have outgrown these devices sit in the rear seat with the seat belt properly fastened.

**Seat belt use during pregnancy**

The seat belt should always be worn during pregnancy. But it is crucial that it be worn in the correct way. The diagonal section should wrap over the shoulder then be routed between the breasts and to the side of the belly. The lap section should lay flat over the thighs and as low as possible under the belly. It must never be allowed to ride upward. Remove all slack from the belt and insure that it fits close to the body without any twists.

As a pregnancy progresses, pregnant drivers should adjust their seats and steering wheel such that they can easily maintain control of the vehicle as they drive (which means they must be able to easily operate the foot pedals and steering wheel). Within this context, they should strive to position the seat with as large a distance as possible between their belly and the steering wheel.

**Child seats**

Please refer to page 36 for information on securing child seats with the seat belts.

**Seat belt reminder**

The seat belt reminder consists of an audible signal, an indicator light near the rearview mirror and a symbol in the instrument panel that alert all occupants of the vehicle if their seat belt is not fastened.
Seat belts

belts are not fastened. These signals will last for approximately 6 seconds.

Rear seats
The seat belt reminder in the rear seat has two additional functions:

- It provides information about which seat belts are fastened in the rear seat. A message will appear in the information display when a belt is being used or if one of the rear doors has been opened. This message will disappear after approximately 30 seconds or can be erased by pressing the READ button on the left steering wheel lever.
- It also provides a reminder if one of the occupants of the rear seat has unbuckled his/her seat belt while the vehicle is in motion. A visual and audible signal will be given. These signals will stop when the seat belt has been re-buckled or can be stopped by pressing the READ button.

The message in the information display can always be accessed, even if it has been erased, by pressing the READ button to display stored messages.

Seat belt maintenance
Check periodically that the seat belts are in good condition. Use water and a mild detergent for cleaning. Check seat belt mechanism function as follows: attach the seat belt and pull rapidly on the strap.
Supplemental Restraint System (SRS)

As an enhancement to the three-point seat belts, your Volvo is equipped with a Supplemental Restraint System (SRS). Volvo’s SRS consists of seat belt pretensioners, front airbags, side impact airbags, the occupant weight sensor, and inflatable curtains. All of these systems are monitored by the SRS control module. An SRS warning light in the instrument panel (see the illustration) illuminates when the ignition key is turned to position I, II, or III, and will normally go out after approximately 7 seconds if no faults are detected in the system.

Where applicable, a text message will also be displayed when the SRS warning light illuminates. If this warning symbol is not functioning properly, the general warning symbol illuminates and either SRS AIRBAG SERVICE URGENT or SRS AIRBAG SERVICE REQUIRED will be displayed.

**WARNING**

- If the SRS warning light stays on after the engine has started or if it illuminates while you are driving, have the vehicle inspected by a trained and qualified Volvo service technician as soon as possible.

- Never try to repair any component or part of the SRS yourself. Any interference in the system could cause malfunction and serious injury. All work on these systems should be performed by a trained and qualified Volvo service technician.

**WARNING**

If your vehicle has been subjected to flood conditions (e.g. soaked carpeting/standing water on the floor of the vehicle) or if your vehicle has become flood-damaged in any way, do not attempt to start the vehicle or put the key in the ignition before disconnecting the battery (see below). This may cause airbag deployment which could result in personal injury. Have the vehicle towed to a trained and qualified Volvo service technician for repairs.

**Automatic transmission**

Before attempting to tow the vehicle, use the following procedure to override the shiftlock system to move the gear selector to the neutral position:

1. Switch off the ignition for at least 10 minutes and disconnect the battery.
2. Wait at least one minute.
3. Insert the key in the ignition and turn it to position II.
4. Press firmly on the brake pedal.
5. Move the gear selector from Park (P) to the Neutral (N) position, see page 151, for information on manually overriding the shiftlock system.
The front airbag system

The front airbags supplement the three-point seat belts. For these airbags to provide the protection intended, seat belts must be worn at all times.

The front airbag system includes gas generators surrounded by the airbags, and deceleration sensors that activate the gas generators, causing the airbags to be inflated with nitrogen gas.

- The driver’s side front airbag is folded and located in the steering wheel hub.
- The passenger’s side front airbag is folded behind a panel located above the glove compartment.

Location of the passenger’s side front airbag

As the movement of the seats’ occupants compresses the airbags, some of the gas is expelled at a controlled rate to provide better cushioning. Both seat belt pretensioners also deploy, minimizing seat belt slack. The entire process, including inflation and deflation of the airbags, takes approximately one fifth of a second.

The location of the front airbags is indicated by SRS AIRBAG embossed on the steering wheel pad and above the glove compartment, and by decals on both sun visors and on the front and far right side of the dash.
**WARNING**

- The airbags in the vehicle are designed to be a SUPPLEMENT to-not a replacement for-the three-point seat belts. For maximum protection, wear seat belts at all times. Be aware that no system can prevent all possible injuries that may occur in an accident.
- Never drive a vehicle with a steering wheel-mounted airbag with your hands on the steering wheel pad/airbag housing.
- The front airbags are designed to help prevent serious injury. Deployment occurs very quickly and with considerable force. During normal deployment and depending on variables such as seating position, one may experience abrasions, bruises, swellings, or other injuries as a result from deployment of one or both of the airbags.
- When installing any accessory equipment, make sure that the front airbag system is not damaged. Any interference in the system could cause malfunction.

**Front airbag deployment**

- The front airbags are designed to deploy during certain frontal or front-angular collisions, impacts, or decelerations, depending on the crash severity, angle, speed and object impacted. The airbags may also deploy in certain non-frontal collisions where rapid deceleration occurs.
- The SRS sensors, which trigger the front airbags, are designed to react to both the impact of the collision and the inertial forces generated by it, and to determine if the intensity of the collision is sufficient for the seat belt pretensioners and/or airbags to be deployed.

However, not all frontal collisions activate the front airbags.

- If the collision involves a nonrigid object (e.g., a snow drift or bush), or a rigid, fixed object at a low speed, the front airbags will not necessarily deploy.
- Front airbags do not normally deploy in a side impact collision, in a collision from the rear or in a rollover situation.
- The amount of damage to the bodywork does not reliably indicate if the airbags should have deployed or not.

**NOTE**

- Deployment of front airbags occurs only one time during an accident. In a collision where deployment occurs, the airbags and seat belt pretensioners activate. Some noise occurs and a small amount of powder is released. The release of the powder may appear as smoke-like matter. This is a normal characteristic and does not indicate fire.
- Volvo’s front airbags use special sensors that are integrated with the front seat buckles. The point at which the airbag deploys is determined by whether or not the seat belt is being used, as well as the severity of the collision.
- Collisions can occur where only one of the airbags deploys. If the impact is less severe, but severe enough to present a clear injury risk, the airbags are triggered at partial capacity. If the impact is more severe, the airbags are triggered at full capacity.

Should you have questions about any component in the SRS system, please contact a trained and qualified Volvo service technician or Volvo Customer Support:

**In the USA**

Volvo Cars of North America, LLC
WARNING

- Do not use child safety seats or child booster cushions/backrests in the front passenger's seat. We also recommend that occupants under 4 feet 7 inches (140 cm) in height who have outgrown these devices sit in the rear seat with the seat belt fastened.\(^1\)
- Never drive with the airbags deployed. The fact that they hang out can impair the steering of your vehicle. Other safety systems can also be damaged.
- The smoke and dust formed when the airbags are deployed can cause skin and eye irritation in the event of prolonged exposure.

\(^1\) See also the Occupant Weight Sensor information on page 26.
01 Safety

Supplemental Restraint System

WARNING
- Children must never be allowed in the front passenger’s seat. Volvo recommends that ALL occupants (adults and children) shorter than 4 feet 7 inches (140 cm) be seated in the back seat of any vehicle with a passenger-side front airbag. See page 35 for guidelines.
- Occupants in the front passenger’s seat must never sit on the edge of the seat, sit leaning toward the instrument panel or otherwise sit out of position.
- The occupant’s back must be as upright as comfort allows and be against the seat back with the seat belt properly fastened.
- Feet must be on the floor, e.g., not on the dash, seat or out of the window.

Airbag decal on passenger’s side dashboard

WARNING
- No objects or accessory equipment, e.g. dashboard covers, may be placed on, attached to, or installed near the airbag hatch (the area above the glove compartment) or the area affected by airbag deployment.
- There should be no loose articles, e.g. coffee cups, on the floor, seat, or dashboard area.
- Never try to open the airbag cover on the steering wheel or the passenger’s side dashboard. This should only be done by a trained and qualified Volvo service technician.
- Failure to follow these instructions can result in injury to the vehicle occupants.

Airbag decal on the outside of both sun visors
Disabling the passenger's side front airbag

Volvo recommends that ALL occupants (adults and children) shorter than 4 feet 7 inches (140 cm) be seated in the rear seat of any vehicle with a passenger’s side front airbag, and be properly restrained. Children should always be seated in child restraints appropriate for their size and weight. See also the child safety recommendations on page 34.

The Occupant Weight Sensor (OWS) is designed to meet the regulatory requirements of Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208 and is designed to disable (will not inflate) the passenger’s side front airbag under certain conditions.

The OWS works with sensors that are part of the front passenger’s seat and seat belt. The sensors are designed to detect the presence of a properly seated occupant and determine if the passenger’s side front airbag should be enabled (may inflate) or disabled (will not inflate).

The OWS will disable (will not inflate) the passenger’s side front airbag when:

- the front passenger’s seat is unoccupied, or has small/medium objects in the front seat,
- the system determines that an infant is present in a rear-facing infant seat that is installed according to the manufacturer’s instructions,
- the system determines that a small child is present in a forward-facing child restraint that is installed according to the manufacturer’s instructions,
- the system determines that a small child is present in a booster seat,
- a front passenger takes his/her weight off of the seat for a period of time,
- a child or a small person occupies the front passenger’s seat.

The OWS uses a PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp which will illuminate and stay on to remind you that the passenger’s side front airbag is disabled. The PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp is located in the overhead console, near the base of the rearview mirror.

NOTE

When the ignition is switched on, the OWS indicator light will go on for up to 10 seconds while the system performs a self-diagnostic test.

However, if a fault is detected in the system:

- The OWS indicator light will stay on
- The SRS warning light (see page 21) will come on and stay on

The message PASS. AIRBAG OFF SERVICE URGENT will be displayed in the information display.
If a fault in the system is detected and indicated as explained on the preceding page, be aware that the passenger’s side front airbag will not deploy in the event of a collision. In this case, the SRS system and Occupant Weight Sensor should be inspected by a trained and qualified Volvo service technician as soon as possible.

**WARNING**

- Never try to open, remove, or repair any components in the OWS system. This could result in system malfunction. Maintenance or repairs should only be carried out by a trained and qualified Volvo service technician.
- The front passenger’s seat should not be modified in any way. This could reduce pressure on the seat cushion, which might interfere with the OWS system’s function.

The OWS is designed to disable (will not inflate) the passenger’s side front airbag when a rear facing infant seat, a forward-facing child restraint, or a booster seat is detected. The PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp will illuminate and stay on to remind you that the passenger’s side front airbag is disabled (see the following table).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Passenger’s seat occupancy status</th>
<th>OWS indicator light status</th>
<th>Passenger’s side front airbag status</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unoccupied</td>
<td>PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Occupied by low weight occupant</td>
<td>PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Occupied by heavy occupant</td>
<td>PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Volvo recommends that children always be properly restrained in appropriate child restraints in the rear seats. Do not assume that the passenger’s side front airbag is disabled unless the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp is lit. Make sure the child restraint is properly installed. If there is any doubt as to the status of the passenger’s side front airbag, move the child restraint to the rear seat.*

The OWS is designed to enable (may inflate) the passenger’s side front airbag anytime the system senses that a person of adult size is sitting properly in the front passenger’s seat. The PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp will be off and remain off.

If a person of adult size is sitting in the front passenger’s seat, but the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp is on, it is possible that the person isn’t sitting properly in the seat. If this happens:

1. Turn the vehicle off and ask the person to place the seatback in an upright position.
2. Have the person sit upright in the seat, centered on the seat cushion, with the person’s legs comfortably extended.
3. Restart the vehicle and have the person remain in this position for about two minutes. This will allow the system to detect that person and enable the passenger’s frontal airbag.
4. If the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp remains on even after this, the person should be advised to ride in the rear seat.

This condition reflects limitations of the OWS classification capability. It does not indicate OWS malfunction.

**Modifications**

If you are considering modifying your vehicle in any way to accommodate a disability, for
example by altering or adapting the driver’s or front passenger’s seat(s) and/or airbag systems, please contact Volvo at:

In the USA
Volvo Cars of North America, LLC
Customer Care Center
P.O. Box 914 Rockleigh, New Jersey 07647-0914
1-800-458-1552

In Canada
Volvo Cars of Canada Corp.
National Customer Service
175 Gordon Baker Road North York, Ontario M2H 2N7
1-800-663-8255

WARNING
• No objects that add to the total weight on the seat should be placed on the front passenger’s seat. If a child is seated in the front passenger’s seat with any additional weight, this extra weight could cause the OWS system to enable the airbag, which might cause it to deploy in the event of a collision, thereby injuring the child.
• The seat belt should never be wrapped around an object on the front passenger’s seat. This could interfere with the OWS system’s function.
• The front passenger’s seat belt should never be used in a way that exerts more pressure on the passenger than normal. This could increase the pressure exerted on the weight sensor by a child, and result in the airbag being enabled, which might cause it to deploy in the event of a collision, thereby injuring the child.

WARNING
Keep the following points in mind with respect to the OWS system. Failure to follow these instructions could adversely affect the system’s function and result in serious injury to the occupant of the front passenger’s seat:
• The full weight of the front seat passenger should always be on the seat cushion. The passenger should never lift him/herself off the seat cushion using the armrest in the door or the center console, by pressing the feet on the floor, by sitting on the edge of the seat cushion, or by pressing against the backrest in a way that reduces pressure on the seat cushion. This could cause OWS to disable the passenger’s side front airbag.
• Do not place any type of object on the front passenger’s seat in such a way that jamming, pressing, or squeezing occurs between the object and the front seat, other than as a direct result of the correct use of the Automatic Locking Retractor/Emergency Locking Retractor (ALR/ELR) seat belt, see page 35.
• No objects should be placed under the front passenger’s seat. This could interfere with the OWS system’s function.
Side impact protection airbags

Side impact airbags – front seats only

As an enhancement to the structural side impact protection built into your car, the car is also equipped with Side Impact Protection System (SIPS) airbags.

The SIPS airbag system is designed to help increase occupant protection in the event of certain side impact collisions. The SIPS airbags are designed to deploy only during certain side-impact collisions, depending on the crash severity, angle, speed and point of impact.

Components in the SIPS airbag system

This SIPS airbag system consists of gas generators and side airbag modules built into the outboard sides of both front seat backrests.

Location of the side impact (SIPS) airbag

SIPS airbag deployment

NOTE

SIPS airbag deployment (one airbag) occurs only on the side of the vehicle affected by the impact. The airbags are not designed to deploy in all side impact situations.

WARNING

- The SIPS airbag system is a supplement to the structural Side Impact Protection System and the three-point seat belt system. It is not designed to deploy during collisions from the front or rear of the car or in rollover situations.
- The use of seat covers on the front seats may impede SIPS airbag deployment.
- No objects, accessory equipment or stickers may be placed on, attached to or installed near the SIPS airbag system or in the area affected by SIPS airbag deployment.
- Never try to open or repair any components of the SIPS airbag system. This should be done only by a trained and qualified Volvo service technician.
- In order for the SIPS airbag to provide its best protection, both front seat occupants should sit in an upright position with the seat belt properly fastened.
- Failure to follow these instructions can result in injury to the occupants of the vehicle in the event of an accident.
The Volvo Inflatable Curtain (VIC) system

This system consists of inflatable curtains located along the sides of the roof liners, stretching from the center of both front side windows to the rear edge of the rear side door windows. It is designed to help protect the heads of the occupants of the front seats and the occupant of the outboard rear seating positions in certain side impact collisions.

In certain side impacts, both the Inflatable Curtain (VIC) and the Side Impact Airbag System (SIPS airbag) will deploy. The VIC and the SIPS airbag deploy simultaneously.

**NOTE**
If the inflatable curtain deploys, it remains inflated for approximately 3 seconds.

**WARNING**

- The VIC system is a supplement to the Side Impact Protection System. It is not designed to deploy during collisions from the front or rear of the car or in roll-over situations.
- Never try to open or repair any components of the VIC system. This should be done only by a trained and qualified Volvo service technician.
- Never hang heavy items from the ceiling handles. This could impede deployment of the Inflatable curtain.

**WARNING**

In order for the VIC to provide its best protection, both front seat occupants and both outboard rear seat occupants should sit in an upright position with the seat belt properly fastened; adults using the seat belt and children using the proper child restraint system. Only adults should sit in the front seats. Children must never be allowed in the front passenger’s seat, see page 35 for guidelines. Failure to follow these instructions can result in injury to the vehicle occupants in an accident.
The WHIPS system consists of specially designed hinges and brackets on the front seat backrests designed to help absorb some of the energy generated in a collision from the rear (when the vehicle is "rearended").

In the event of a collision of this type, the hinges and brackets of the front seat backrests are designed to change position slightly to allow the backrest/head restraint to help support the occupant’s head before moving slightly rearward. This movement helps absorb some of the forces that could result in whiplash.

**WARNING**
- The WHIPS system is designed to supplement the other safety systems in your car. For this system to function properly, the three-point seat belt must be worn. Please be aware that no system can prevent all possible injuries that may occur in an accident.
- The WHIPS system is designed to function in certain collisions from the rear, depending on the crash severity, angle and speed.

**WARNING**
- Occupants in the front seats must never sit out of position. The occupant’s back must be as upright as comfort allows and be against the seat back with the seat belt properly fastened.
- If your car has been involved in a rear-end collision, the front seat backrests must be inspected by a trained and qualified Volvo service technician, even if the seats appear to be undamaged.
01 Safety

Whiplash Protection System

Certain components in the WHIPS system may need to be replaced.

- Do not attempt to service any component in the WHIPS system yourself.

**WARNING**
Any contact between the front seat backrests and the folded rear seat could impede the function of the WHIPS system. If the rear seat is folded down, the occupied front seats must be adjusted forward so that they do not touch the folded rear seat.

**WARNING**
- Boxes, suitcases, etc. wedged behind the front seats could impede the function of the WHIPS system.
- If the rear seat backrests are folded down, cargo must be secured to prevent it from sliding forward against the front seat backrests in the event of a collision from the rear. This could interfere with the action of the WHIPS system.
Driving after a collision

If the vehicle has been involved in a collision, the text CRASH MODE SEE MANUAL may appear in the information display. This indicates that the vehicle’s functionality has been reduced.

This text can only be shown if the display is undamaged and the vehicle’s electrical system is intact.

CRASH MODE is a feature that is triggered if one or more of the safety systems (for example, front or side airbags, an inflatable curtain, or one or more of the seat belt pretensioners) has deployed. The collision may have damaged an important function in the vehicle, such as the fuel lines, sensors for one of the safety systems, the brake system, etc.

**WARNING**

- Never attempt to repair the vehicle yourself or to reset the electrical system after the vehicle has displayed CRASH MODE SEE MANUAL. This could result in injury or improper system function.
- Restoring the vehicle to normal operating mode should only be done by a trained and qualified Volvo service technician.
- After CRASH MODE SEE MANUAL has been displayed, if you detect the odor of fuel vapor, or see any signs of fuel leakage, do not attempt to start the vehicle. Leave the vehicle immediately.

### Attempting to start the vehicle

If damage to the vehicle is minor and there is no fuel leakage, you may attempt to start the vehicle. To do so:

1. Remove the ignition key or optional keyless drive start control, see page 146.
2. Reinsert the key or start control in the ignition switch. The vehicle will then attempt to reset CRASH MODE to normal mode.

3. Try to start the vehicle.

**Moving the vehicle**

If the electrical system is able to reset system status to normal (CRASH MODE SEE MANUAL will no longer be displayed), the vehicle may be moved carefully from its present position, if for example, it is blocking traffic. It should, however, not be moved farther than is absolutely necessary.

**WARNING**

Even if the vehicle appears to be drivable after CRASH MODE has been set, it should not be driven or towed (pulled by another vehicle). There may be concealed damage that could make it difficult or impossible to control. The vehicle should be transported on a flatbed tow truck to a trained and qualified Volvo service technician for inspection/repairs.
Children should be seated safely

Volvo recommends the proper use of restraint systems for all occupants including children. Remember that, regardless of age and size, a child should always be properly restrained in a car.

Your car is also equipped with ISOFIX/LATCH attachments, which make it more convenient to install child seats.

Some restraint systems for children are designed to be secured in the vehicle by lap belts or the lap portion of a lap-shoulder belt. Such child restraint systems can help protect children in cars in the event of an accident only if they are used properly. However, children could be endangered in a crash if the child restraints are not properly secured in the vehicle. Failure to follow the installation instructions for your child restraint can result in your child striking the vehicle’s interior in a sudden stop.

Holding a child in your arms is NOT a suitable substitute for a child restraint system. In an accident, a child held in a person’s arms can be crushed between the vehicle’s interior and an unrestrained person. The child could also be injured by striking the interior, or by being ejected from the vehicle during a sudden maneuver or impact. The same can also happen if the infant or child rides unrestrained on the seat. Other occupants should also be properly restrained to help reduce the chance of injuring or increasing the injury of a child.

All states and provinces have legislation governing how and where children should be carried in a car. Find out the regulations existing in your state or province. Recent accident statistics have shown that children are safer in rear seating positions than front seating positions when properly restrained. A child restraint system can help protect a child in a vehicle. Here’s what to look for when selecting a child restraint system:

• It should have a label certifying that it meets applicable Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards (FMVSS 213) – or in Canada, CMVSS 213.
• Make sure the child restraint system is approved for the child’s height, weight and development – the label required by the standard or regulation, or instructions for infant restraints, typically provide this information.
• In using any child restraint system, we urge you to carefully look over the instructions that are provided with the restraint. Be sure you understand them and can use the device properly and safely in this vehicle. A misused child restraint system can result in increased injuries for both the infant or child and other occupants in the vehicle.

When a child has outgrown the child safety seat, you should use the rear seat with the standard seat belt fastened. The best way to help protect the child here is to place the child on a cushion so that the seat belt is properly located on the hips (see the illustration on page 41). Legislation in your state or province may mandate the use of a child seat or cushion in combination with the seat belt, depending on the child’s age and/or size. Please check local regulations.

A specially designed and tested booster cushion (not available in Canada) can be obtained from your Volvo retailer for children weighing 33 – 80 lb. (15 – 36 kg) and 38-54 inches (97 – 137 cm) in height.

**WARNING**

Do not use child safety seats or child booster cushions/backrests in the front passenger’s seat. We also recommend that children under 4 feet 7 inches (140 cm) in height who have outgrown these devices sit in the rear seat with the seat belt fastened.
Automatic Locking Retractor/ Emergency Locking Retractor (ALR/ELR)

To make child seat installation easier, each seat belt (except for the driver's belt) is equipped with a locking mechanism to help keep the seat belt taut.

When attaching the seat belt to a child seat:
1. Attach the seat belt to the child seat according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions.
2. Pull the seat belt out as far as possible.
3. Insert the seat belt latch plate into the buckle (lock) in the usual way.
4. Release the seat belt and pull it taut around the child seat.

A sound from the seat belt retractor will be audible at this time and is normal. The belt will now be locked in place. This function is automatically disabled when the seat belt is unlocked and the belt is fully retracted.

**WARNING**

Do not use child safety seats or child booster cushions/backrests in the front passenger's seat. We also recommend that children who have outgrown these devices sit in the rear seat with the seat belt properly fastened.

Volvo's recommendations

Why does Volvo believe that no child should sit in the front seat of a car? It's quite simple really. A front airbag is a very powerful device designed, by law, to help protect an adult. Because of the size of the airbag and its speed of inflation, a child should never be placed in the front seat, even if he or she is properly belted or strapped into a child safety seat. Volvo has been an innovator in safety for over seventy-five years, and we'll continue to do our part. But we need your help. Please remember to put your children in the back seat, and buckle them up.

Volvo has some very specific recommendations:
- Always wear your seat belt.
- Airbags are a SUPPLEMENTAL safety device which, when used with a three-point seat belt can help reduce serious injuries during certain types of accidents.
Child restraint systems

Child restraints

There are three main types of child restraint systems: infant seats, convertible seats, and booster cushions. They are classified according to the child’s age and size.

The following section provides general information on securing a child restraint using a three-point seat belt. Refer to pages 42–44 for information on securing a child restraint using ISOFIX lower anchors and/or top tether anchorages.

**WARNING**

A child seat should never be used in the front passenger seat of any vehicle with a front passenger airbag – not even if the Passenger airbag off symbol near the rear-view mirror is illuminated (on vehicles equipped with Occupant Weight Sensor). If the severity of an accident were to cause the airbag to inflate, this could lead to serious injury or death to a child seated in this position.

**WARNING**

Always refer to the child restraint manufacturer’s instructions for detailed information on securing the restraint.

**WARNING**

- When not in use, keep the child restraint system secured or remove it from the passenger compartment to help prevent it from injuring passengers in the event of a sudden stop or collision.
- A small child’s head represents a considerable part of its total weight and its neck is still very weak. Volvo recommends that children up to age 4 travel, properly restrained, facing rearward. In addition, Volvo recommends that children should ride rearward facing, properly restrained, as long as possible.
Securing an infant seat with a seat belt

1. Place the infant seat in the rear seat of the vehicle.

2. Attach the seat belt to the infant seat according to the manufacturer’s instructions.

WARNING

A child seat should never be used in the front passenger seat of any vehicle with a front passenger airbag – not even if the passenger airbag off symbol near the rear-view mirror is illuminated (on vehicles equipped with Occupant Weight Sensor). If the severity of an accident were to cause the airbag to inflate, this could lead to serious injury or death to a child seated in this position.

3. Fasten the seat belt by inserting the latch plate into the buckle (lock) until a distinct click is audible.

NOTE

Refer to pages 42–44 for information on securing a child restraint using ISOFIX lower anchors and/or top tether anchorages.
01 Safety

Infant seats

4. Pull the shoulder section of the seat belt out as far as possible to activate the belt’s automatic locking function.

**NOTE**
The locking retractor will automatically release when the seat belt is unbuckled and allowed to retract fully.

5. Press the infant seat firmly in place, let the seat belt retract and pull it taut. A sound from the seat belt retractor’s automatic locking function will be audible at this time and is normal. The seat belt should now be locked in place.

**WARNING**
It should not be possible to move the child restraint more than 1 in. (2.5 cm) in any direction.

6. Push and pull the infant seat to ensure that it is held securely in place by the seat belt.

7. The infant seat can be removed by unbuckling the seat belt and letting it retract completely.
Securing a convertible seat with a seat belt

Do not place the convertible seat in the front passenger’s seat

NOTE
Refer to pages 42–44 for information on securing a child restraint using ISOFIX lower anchors and/or top tether anchorages.

Convertible seats can be used in either a forward or rearward-facing position, depending on the age and size of the child.

WARNING
Always use a convertible seat that is suitable for the child’s age and size. See the convertible seat manufacturer’s recommendations.

Route the seat belt through the convertible seat

WARNING
A small child’s head represents a considerable part of its total weight and its neck is still very weak. Volvo recommends that children up to age 4 travel, properly restrained, facing rearward. In addition, Volvo recommends that children should ride rearward facing, properly restrained, as long as possible.

WARNING
• Convertible child seats should be installed in the rear seat only.
• A rear-facing convertible seat should not be positioned behind the driver’s seat unless there is adequate space for safe installation.

1. Place the convertible seat in the rear seat of the vehicle.
**01 Safety**

### Convertible seats

1. **NOTE**
   - The locking retractor will automatically release when the seat belt is unbuckled and allowed to retract completely.

2. **WARNING**
   - It should not be possible to move the child restraint more than 1 in. (2.5 cm) in any direction.

3. **NOTE**
   - Pull out the shoulder section of the seat belt

4. **WARNING**
   - The convertible seat can be removed by unbuckling the seat belt and letting it retract completely.

5. **WARNING**
   - Ensure that the seat is securely in place

---

**Fasten the seat belt**

2. Attach the seat belt to the convertible seat according to the manufacturer’s instructions.

3. Fasten the seat belt by inserting the latch plate into the buckle (lock) until a distinct click is audible.

4. Pull the shoulder section of the seat belt out as far as possible to activate the belt’s automatic locking function.

5. Press the convertible seat firmly in place, let the seat belt retract and pull it taut. A sound from the seat belt retractor’s automatic locking function will be audible at this time and is normal. The seat belt should now be locked in place.

6. Push and pull the convertible seat to ensure that it is held securely in place by the seat belt.
Securing a booster cushion

Booster cushions are recommended for children who have outgrown convertible seats.

1. Place the booster cushion in the rear seat of the vehicle.
2. With the child properly seated on the booster cushion, attach the seat belt to or around the cushion according to the manufacturer’s instructions.
3. Fasten the seat belt by inserting the latch plate into the buckle (lock) until a distinct click is audible.
4. Ensure that the seat belt is pulled taut and fits snugly around the child.

- **WARNING**
  - The hip section of the three-point seat belt must fit snugly across the child’s hips, not across the stomach.
  - The shoulder section of the three-point seat belt should be positioned across the chest and shoulder.
  - The shoulder belt must never be placed behind the child’s back or under the arm.

Position the child correctly on the booster cushion and fasten the seat belt

**WARNING**

A child seat should never be used in the front passenger seat of any vehicle with a front passenger airbag – not even if the Passenger airbag off symbol near the rear-view mirror is illuminated (on vehicles equipped with Occupant Weight Sensor). If the severity of an accident were to cause the airbag to inflate, this could lead to serious injury or death to a child seated in this position.
Using the ISOFIX lower child seat anchors

ISOFIX lower child restraint anchors

Lower anchors for ISOFIX-equipped child seats are located in the rear, outboard seats, hidden below the backrest cushions. Symbols on the seat back upholstery mark the anchor positions (see the illustration).

To access the anchors:
1. Put the child restraint in position.
2. Kneel on the child restraint to press down the seat cushion and locate the anchors by feel.

3. Fasten the attachment on the child restraint’s lower straps to the ISOFIX lower anchors.
4. Firmly tension the lower child seat straps according to the manufacturer’s instructions.

NOTE
- The rear seat’s center position is not equipped with ISOFIX lower anchors. When installing a child restraint in this position, attach the restraint’s top tether strap (if it is so equipped) to the top tether anchorage point (see page 44) and secure the restraint with the vehicle’s center seat belt (see page 36).
- Always follow your child seat manufacturer’s installation instructions, and use both ISOFIX lower anchors and top tethers whenever possible.

WARNING
- The ISOFIX lower child restraint anchors are only intended for use with child seats positioned in the outboard seating positions. These anchors are not certified for use with any child restraint that is positioned in the center seating position. When securing a child restraint in the center seating position, use only the vehicle’s center seat belt.

Fasten the attachment correctly to the ISOFIX lower anchors
**WARNING**

Be sure to fasten the attachment correctly to the anchor (see the illustration). If the attachment is not correctly fastened, the child restraint may not be properly secured in the event of a collision.
Top tether anchors

Volvo vehicles are equipped with child restraint top tether anchorages in the rear seating positions. They are located on the rear sides of the backrests.

Using the top tether anchorages
1. Place the child restraint on the rear seat.
2. Attach the hook to the anchorage.
3. Route the top tether strap under the head restraint and fasten its attachment to the anchorage.
4. Firmly tension the top tether strap according to the child restraint manufacturer’s instructions. Tension the top tether strap only after the lower anchor straps or the seat belt have been firmly tensioned.

See page 42 for information on securing the child restraint to ISOFIX lower anchors.

WARNING
- Never route a top tether strap over the top or around the head restraint. It should always be routed under the head restraint.
- Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts or harnesses. The anchorages are not able to withstand excessive forces on them in the event of collision if full harness seat belts or adult seat belts are installed to them. An adult who uses a belt anchored in a child restraint anchorage runs a great risk of suffering severe injuries should a collision occur.
- Do not install rear speakers that require the removal of the top tether anchors or interfere with the proper use of the top tether strap.
Registering a child restraint

Child restraints could be recalled for safety reasons. You must register your child restraint to be reached in a recall. To stay informed about child safety seat recalls, be sure to fill out and return the registration card that comes with new child restraints.

Child restraint recall information is readily available in both the U.S. and Canada. For recall information in the U.S., call the U.S. Government’s Auto Safety Hotline at 1-800-424-9393. In Canada, visit Transport Canada’s Child Safety website at http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety/childsafety/menu.htm.
Instrument overview ................................................................................ 48
Instrument panel ..................................................................................... 51
Indicator and warning symbols ............................................................... 53
Symbols – instrument panel ................................................................. 55
Information display ............................................................................. 58
12-volt sockets ..................................................................................... 60
Lighting panel ...................................................................................... 61
Left-side steering wheel lever .............................................................. 64
Trip computer ....................................................................................... 66
Cruise control (option) ........................................................................... 68
Right-side steering wheel lever ............................................................ 70
Steering wheel adjustment, Hazard warning flashers ................. 73
Parking brake ....................................................................................... 74
Power windows ................................................................................... 75
Mirrors ................................................................................................. 77
Power moonroof (option) ................................................................. 80
Personal settings ............................................................................... 82
HomeLink® Wireless Control System (option) ......................... 85
INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS
02 Instruments and controls

Instrument overview
## Instruments and controls

### Instrument overview

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Steering wheel adjustment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Hood opener</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Controls in front doors (see page 50)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Left steering wheel lever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Lighting panel, fuel filler door opener</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Door open handle and locking button</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Climate system air vent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Side window air vent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Cruise control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Horn, airbag</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Main instrument panel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Audio controls (option)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Right steering wheel lever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Ignition switch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Moonroof control (option)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Not in use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Not in use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Courtesy lighting switch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Driver’s side reading light</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Passenger’s side reading light</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Seat belt reminder and Occupant Weight Sensor indicator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>Rear-view mirror</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>Display for climate control, personal settings, and audio system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>Audio system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>Controls for personal settings and audio system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>Controls for climate system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>Gear selector</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>Hazard warning flashers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>Door open handle, and locking button</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>Glove compartment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>Parking brake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>12-volt socket</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>Position for optional equipment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>Position for optional equipment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Instrument overview

Control panel in driver’s door

1. Lockout switch for rear windows
2. Power windows
3. Door mirror button, driver’s side
4. Door mirror adjustment control
5. Door mirror button, passenger’s side
02 Instruments and controls

Instrument panel

1. Speedometer
2. Turn signal, left
3. Warning symbol – See the following pages for additional information.
4. Information display – The display presents information and warning messages, the ambient temperature, clock, etc. When the ambient temperature is between 23 °F and 36 °F (-5 °C and +2 °C), a snowflake symbol is shown in the display. This symbol serves as a warning for possible slippery road surfaces. Please note that this symbol does not indicate a fault with your car. At low speeds, or when the car is not moving, the temperature readings may be slightly higher than the actual ambient temperature.
5. Information symbol – See the following pages for additional information.
6. Turn signal, right
7. Tachometer – Shows engine speed in thousands of revolutions per minute (rpm). Do not drive continuously with the needle in the red area of the dial, which indicates maximum allowable engine rpm range. Instead, shift to a higher gear or slow the vehicle down. The engine management system will automatically prevent excessively high engine speeds. This will be noticeable as a pronounced unevenness in engine speed.
8. Indicator and warning symbols
9. Fuel gauge, see page 267 for fuel tank volume. When a warning light in the gauge comes on, the vehicle should be refueled as soon as possible. See page 66 for more information on fuel level and consumption in the “Trip computer” section.
10. High beam indicator
11. Function display – This window displays information on functions such as the...
Instruments and controls

Instrument panel

- Odometer, trip odometers, optional rain sensor, and cruise control.

12 Trip odometer reset button – The trip odometers are used to measure short distances. Press the button briefly to switch between the odometer for the car’s total mileage and the two trip odometers, T1 and T2. A long press (more than 2 seconds) resets the currently selected trip odometer.

13 Temperature gauge – The gauge indicates the temperature of the engine cooling system. If the temperature is abnormally high and the needle enters the red zone, a message is shown in the display. Bear in mind that auxiliary lamps in front of the air intake reduce the cooling capacity at high outside temperatures and high engine loads.

14 Indicator and warning symbols
Function check
The indicator and warning symbols\(^1\) light up when you turn the ignition key or the optional keyless drive start control to the driving position (position II) before starting. This shows that the symbols are functioning.

When the engine starts, all symbols go out. If the engine is not started within 5 seconds, all of the symbols except the malfunction indicator light (CHECK ENGINE) and the oil pressure warning light will go out. Certain symbols may not have their functions illustrated, depending on the car’s equipment.

The PARK BRAKE symbol will not go out until the parking brake has been released.

Symbols in the center of the instrument panel

If the red warning symbol lights up:
1. Stop the car as soon as possible in a suitable location.
2. Read the message in the information display.
3. Follow the instructions provided, or contact a trained and qualified Volvo service technician. Erase the message by pressing READ, see page 58.

Information symbol
The yellow information symbol lights up to alert the driver to a message in the information display. This symbol illuminates when the vehicle is traveling at speeds below 5 mph (7 km/h).

The message can be erased by pressing the READ button, see page 58, or will disappear automatically (the length of time required for the message to disappear varies, depending on the function indicated).

When the message "TIME FOR REGULAR SERVICE" is displayed, the text can be erased and the information symbol light can be turned off by pressing the READ button. The text will disappear and the symbol light will go out automatically after two minutes.

\(^1\) On certain engines, the symbol for low oil pressure is not used. Instead, a text warning is provided in the information display, see page 216.
**Indicators and warning symbols**

This symbol may also light up in combination with other indicator or warning symbols.

**NOTE**

The car can still be driven after the information symbol has come on. The car can be driven for 1–2 weeks after service-related information has been displayed.
As you drive, a computer called On-Board Diagnostics II (OBDII) monitors your car’s engine, transmission, electrical and emission systems. The CHECK ENGINE light will light up if the computer senses a condition that potentially may need correcting. When this happens, please have your car checked by a trained and qualified Volvo service technician as soon as possible.

A CHECK ENGINE light may have many causes. Sometimes, you may not notice a change in your car’s behavior. Even so, an uncorrected condition could hurt fuel economy, emission controls, and drivability. Extended driving without correcting the cause could even damage other components in your car.

1. Malfunction indicator light

The CHECK ENGINE light will light up if the computer senses a condition that potentially may need correcting. When this happens, please have your car checked by a trained and qualified Volvo service technician as soon as possible.

2. Anti-lock Brake system (ABS)

If the warning light comes on, there is a malfunction of the ABS system (the standard braking system will still function).

The vehicle should be driven to a trained and qualified Volvo service technician for inspection, see page 153 for additional information.

3. Rear fog light

This symbol indicates that the rear fog light (located in the driver’s side taillight cluster) is on.

4. Stability system STC or DSTC

This indicator symbol flashes when the STC (Stability and Traction control system) or the DSTC (Dynamic Stability and Traction control system) is actively working to stabilize the car, see page 155 for more detailed information.

5. Tire Pressure Monitoring System

This system monitors inflation pressure in the tires. See page 197 for more information.

6. Fuel level warning light

When this light comes on, the vehicle should be refueled as soon as possible.
02 Instruments and controls

Symbols – instrument panel

Symbols – right side

1. Turn signal indicator for trailer (certain markets only)
If you are towing a trailer, this light will flash simultaneously with the turn signals on the trailer. If the light does not flash when signaling, one of the turn signals on the trailer or on the car are not functioning properly.

2. Parking brake applied
This light is on when the parking brake (hand brake) is applied. The parking brake lever is situated between the front seats, see page 74 for more information.

3. SRS system warning light
If this light comes on while the car is being driven, or remains on for longer than approximately 10 seconds after the car has been started, the SRS system’s diagnostic functions have detected a fault in a seat belt lock or pretensioner, a front airbag, side impact airbag, and/or an inflatable curtain. Have the system(s) inspected by a trained and qualified Volvo service technician as soon as possible.

4. Oil pressure warning light
If the light comes on while driving, the car, stop the engine immediately, and check the engine oil level. If the oil level is normal and the light stays on after restart, have the car towed to the nearest trained and qualified Volvo service technician. After hard driving, the light may come on occasionally when the engine is idling. This is normal, provided it goes off when the engine speed is increased.

5. Seat belt reminder
This symbol (and the seat belt reminder light above the rear view mirror) will light up if either front seat occupant has not buckled his/her seat belt. If the car is not moving, the symbols will go out after approximately 6 seconds.

6. Generator warning light
If the light comes on while the engine is running, have the charging system checked by an authorized Volvo workshop.

NOTE
Canadian models are equipped with the second symbol.

NOTE
On certain engines, this symbol is not used to indicate low oil pressure. Instead, a text warning is provided in the information display, see also page 216.
7. Brake failure warning light

If this light comes on while driving or braking, stop the car as quickly as possible in a safe place, open the hood, and check the brake fluid level in the reservoir, see page 215 for the location of the reservoir.

**NOTE**
Canadian models are equipped with the second symbol.

**WARNING**
If the fluid level is below the MIN mark in the reservoir or if a Brake failure – Service urgent message is displayed in the information display: **DO NOT DRIVE.** Have the car towed to a trained and qualified Volvo service technician and have the brake system inspected.

If the BRAKES and ABS warning lights come on at the same time, this could indicate a fault in the brake system.

In this case:
1. Stop the car in a suitable place and switch off the engine.
2. Restart the engine.
3. If both warning lights go off, no further action is required and the car can be driven.
4. If both lights remain on after the engine has been restarted, switch off the engine again and check the brake fluid level, see page 215 for the location of the reservoir.

**Door open warning**
The driver will be alerted if one of the doors, the hood or the tailgate is open or ajar.

**At low speeds**
If the car is moving at a speed of less than approximately 3 mph (5 km/h), the Information symbol in the instrument panel will light up and a message will be shown in the information display indicating which door(s), etc is not completely closed.

**At higher speeds**
If the car is moving at a speed above approximately 6 mph (10 km/h), the Warning symbol in the instrument panel will light up and a message will be shown in the information display indicating which door(s), etc is not completely closed.

**Hood and tailgate**
If the hood and/or tailgate is not completely closed, the Information symbol in the instrument panel will light up and a message will be displayed, regardless of the vehicle’s speed.
When an indicator or warning light in the instrument panel comes on, a message is also shown in the information display. To read a message:

1. Press the READ button (1).
2. Pressing READ repeatedly enables you to scroll to any other messages that may be stored.

### Messages

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>STOP SAFELY&lt;sup&gt;A&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Stop the vehicle in a safe place and switch off the engine to help prevent the risk of serious damage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIGH ENGINE TEMP STOP SAFELY</td>
<td>Stop the vehicle in a safe place and switch off the engine to help prevent the risk of serious damage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SERVICE URGENT&lt;sup&gt;A&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Take your car to a trained and qualified Volvo service technician for inspection immediately.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SEE MANUAL&lt;sup&gt;A&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Refer to your owner's manual. For additional information, please contact your Volvo retailer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SERVICE REQUIRED&lt;sup&gt;A&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Take your car to a trained and qualified Volvo service technician for inspection as soon as possible (but preferably before the next scheduled maintenance service).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BOOK TIME FOR SERVICE</td>
<td>Book time for service at an authorized Volvo workshop.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIME FOR REGULAR MAINTENANCE</td>
<td>This message is affected by the number of miles/km driven, by the number of months, or by the number of engine hours since the service reminder was reset at the most recent regularly scheduled service.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAINTENANCE OVER-DUE</td>
<td>If the vehicle is not serviced according to schedule, the warranty may not apply to damaged parts, etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Message | Meaning
--- | ---
TIME FOR REGULAR MAINTENANCE | This message is affected by the number of miles/km driven, by the number of months, or by the number of engine hours since the service reminder was reset at the most recent regularly scheduled service.
REMINDER CHECK OIL LEVEL | Stop as soon as possible and switch off the engine, check the oil level and top up if necessary, see page 216.

^ This is part of the message. Additional information will also be displayed.
02 Instruments and controls

12-volt sockets

12-volt socket (front seat)

The 12-volt socket can be used to plug in certain accessories such as cellular telephones, etc. The maximum current is 10 A. The key must be in position I (or higher) for the auxiliary socket to function.

Ashtrays/cigarette lighter

The auxiliary socket can also be used for a cigarette lighter¹, and ashtrays, which can be purchased from your Volvo retailer.

NOTE
The cover should be kept on when the auxiliary socket is not in use.

NOTE
The 12-volt socket in the rear seat cannot function as a cigarette lighter.

12-volt socket (rear seat)

¹ Accessory.
**Lighting panel**

### 02 Instruments and controls

#### Lighting panel

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pos.</th>
<th>Lighting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Daytime running lights off. High beam flash only." /></td>
<td>Daytime running lights off. High beam flash only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Parking lights" /></td>
<td>Parking lights</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Daytime running lights. High beams and high beam flash can be used in this position." /></td>
<td>Daytime running lights. High beams and high beam flash can be used in this position.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Parking lights

The front and rear parking lights can be turned on even when the ignition is switched off.
- Turn switch (1) to the parking light position.

The license plate lights also illuminate when the parking lights are switched on.

#### Headlights

1. Turn the ignition key to position II.
2. The low beam headlights (daytime running lights) illuminate automatically, except when the light switch (1) is in the parking light position ³.

#### Active Bi-Xenon Lights (ABL)–option

When the ABL function is activated, the headlight beams adjust laterally to help light up a curve according to movements of the steering wheel.

This function can be activated by turning the lighting switch to the ABL position (indicated by the arrow in the illustration). The indicator light in the ABL symbol will illuminate.

The function can be deactivated by turning the lighting switch counterclockwise to one of the other lighting positions.

³ On Canadian models, the daytime running lights will remain on with the light switch in this position.
02 Instruments and controls

Lighting panel

Brake lights
The brake lights come on automatically when the brakes are applied.

Fog lights
Front fog lights (option)
The front fog lights can be used in combination with either the headlights or the parking lights.
1. Turn the ignition key to position II.
2. Press button (3) to turn on the front fog lights.
An indicator light in the button illuminates when the front fog lights are on.

Rear fog light
The single rear fog light is located in the driver's side taillight cluster.
The rear fog light will only function in combination with the high/low beam headlights or the optional front fog lights.
1. Turn the ignition key to position II.
2. Press button (5) to turn on the rear fog light.
An indicator light in the button illuminates when the rear fog light is on.

NOTE

The rear fog light is considerably brighter than the normal taillights and should be used only when conditions such as fog, rain, snow, smoke or dust reduce visibility for other vehicles to less than 500 ft. (150 meters).

Instrument panel lighting
The instrument panel lighting illuminates when the ignition is in position II and the light switch (1) is in either position or .

NOTE
To make it easier to read the odometer, trip odometer, clock, and ambient temperature, these gauges illuminate when the vehicle is unlocked and when the key has been removed from the ignition switch. The lighting will go out when the vehicle is locked.

Move the thumb wheel (2) up to increase brightness or down to decrease brightness.

NOTE

- This function can only be activated in twilight or dark conditions, and only when the vehicle is in motion.
- If the indicator light flashes, this indicates a fault in the ABL system. A text message will also be displayed.

Headlight pattern with ABL deactivated (left) and activated (right)
Unlocking the fuel filler door
With the ignition switched off, press button (4) to unlock the fuel filler door. Please note that the fuel filler door will remain unlocked until the car begins to move forward.

An audible click will be heard when the fuel filler door re-locks.
02 Instruments and controls

Left-side steering wheel lever

**Lever positions**

- Turn signals, lane change position
- Turn signals, position for normal turns
- High beam flash
- Toggle between high and low beams, Home Safe lighting

**Turn signals**

**When turning**
- Move the lever as far up or down as possible (to position 2) to start the turn signals. The turn signals will be cancelled automatically by the movement of the steering wheel, or the lever can be returned to its initial position by hand.

**When changing lanes**
The driver can automatically flash the turn signals 3 times by:
- Moving the turn signal lever up or down to position 1 and releasing it.
- Moving the lever up or down to position 2 and immediately back to its original position.

**High beam flash**
1. Turn the ignition key to position II.
2. Pull the turn signal lever to position 3. The high beams will remain on until the lever is released.

**Home safe lighting**
When you leave your car at night, you can make use of the home safe lighting function to illuminate the area in front of the car.
1. Remove the key from the ignition switch.
2. Pull the direction indicator lever as far as possible towards the steering wheel (to position 4) and release it.
3. Exit the car and lock the doors.

**NOTE**
- This automatic flashing sequence can be interrupted by immediately moving the lever in the opposite direction.
- If the turn signal indicator flashes faster than normal, check for a burned-out turn signal bulb.

1 Factory setting

**High/low beam headlights**

**Continuous high beams**
1. Turn the ignition key to position II.
2. With the light switch (1) in position [ ] , see page 61, pull the turn signal lever toward the steering wheel (position 4) to toggle between high and low beams.

**Home safe lighting**
When you leave your car at night, you can make use of the home safe lighting function to illuminate the area in front of the car.
1. Remove the key from the ignition switch.
2. Pull the turn signal lever to position 3. The high beams will remain on until the lever is released.
preferences by using the Personal Settings function, see page 82 for more information.
Trip computer

**1** READ (press to acknowledge/confirm/erase a message)

**2** Thumb wheel (used to scroll among the trip computer menus)

**3** RESET

The trip computer stores information gathered from several systems in your car and has four menus (five on Canadian models) that can be shown in the information display.

- MILES TO EMPTY TANK
- AVERAGE (average fuel consumption)
- INSTANTANEOUS (current fuel consumption)
- AVERAGE SPEED

### Note

Warning messages from the car’s monitoring systems will override the trip computer function.

If a warning message is shown in the information display while you are using the trip computer:

1. Acknowledge the message by pressing the READ (button 1).
2. Press READ again to return to the trip computer function.

### Controls

The trip computer functions can be accessed by twisting the thumb wheel (2) one step at a time in either direction. Twisting a final time returns you to the original function.

### MILES TO EMPTY TANK

This function shows the approximate distance that can be driven on the fuel remaining in the tank. The calculation is based on average fuel consumption during the last 20 miles (30 km) of driving and the amount of fuel remaining in the tank when the reading was taken.

When the message ---- miles to empty tank appears in the display, refuel as soon as possible.

### AVERAGE

This value indicates fuel consumption since the last time the trip computer was reset, by pressing RESET (button 3). When the engine is switched off, information on fuel consumption is stored and remains in system memory until RESET (button 3) is pressed again.

### INSTANTANEOUS

This value indicates the current fuel consumption, based on readings taken once per second. When the car is not moving, "----" will be displayed.

### AVERAGE SPEED

This value indicates average speed since the last time the trip computer was reset, by pressing RESET (button 3). When the engine is switched off, information on average speed is stored and remains in system memory until the RESET (button 3) is pressed again.
ACTUAL SPEED (Canadian models only)
This function provides the driver with an instantaneous conversion of the car's current speed from km/h to mph.

NOTE
Trip computer readings may vary slightly depending on the circumference of the tires on the car, tire inflation, or driving style.
02 Instruments and controls

Cruise control (option)

Engaging the cruise control function

The cruise control buttons are located on the left side of the steering wheel hub.

NOTE

This does not set the vehicle's speed.

1. Press the CRUISE button. CRUISE will appear in the function display in the center of the instrument panel.
2. Press + or – to set the current speed. CRUISE ON will be displayed.

Increasing or decreasing speed

Use + or – in the following ways to increase or decrease the vehicle's speed:

1. Press and hold down + or – until the vehicle reaches the desired speed. This will become the set speed when the button is released.
2. Press + or – for approximately a half second and release the button to increase or decrease vehicle speed by approximately 1 mph (1.6 km/h).

NOTE

- Cruise control will not function at speeds below 20 mph (30 km/h).
- Momentary acceleration, for less than 1 minute (e.g. when passing another car), does not affect cruise control operation. The car will automatically return to the previously set speed when the accelerator pedal is released.

Temporarily disengaging the cruise control

- Press 0 to temporarily disengage cruise control. CRUISE will appear in the function display. The currently set speed is stored in the system's memory.

Cruise control is also automatically disengaged:

- If the speed drops below approximately 20 mph (30 km/h) when driving uphill.
- When the brake or clutch pedal is depressed.
- If the gear selector is moved to position N.
2 Instruments and controls

Cruise control (option)

- During wheel spin or wheel lock-up.
- If the vehicle’s speed is increased by using the accelerator pedal for more than 1 minute.

**Returning to the set speed**

Press the button to resume the previously set speed. **CRUISE ON** will be displayed.

**Disengaging cruise control**

Cruise control can also be disengaged by:

- Pressing the **CRUISE** button (**CRUISE ON** will no longer be shown in the function display).
- Putting the gear selector in Neutral (N).

**WARNING**

Cruise control should not be used in heavy traffic or when driving on wet or slippery roads. Cruise control may not maintain set speed on steep downgrades.
02 Instruments and controls

Right-side steering wheel lever

Windshield wipers

A Windshield/headlight washers
B Rain sensor (option) – on/off, see page 70
C Thumb wheel
D Tailgate wiper/washer

Windshield wipers off
0 The windshield wipers are off when the lever is in position 0.

Manual wiper function
From position 0, move the lever upward. The windshield wipers will sweep one stroke at a time for as long as the lever is held up.

Intermittent wiper function
With the lever in this position, you can set the wiper interval by moving the thumb wheel (C) upward to increase wiper speed or downward to decrease the speed.

Continuous wiper function
The wipers operate at "normal" speed.
High speed wiper function.

A–Windshield washers
Pull the lever toward the steering wheel and release it. The wipers will make 2–3 sweeps across the windshield after the lever has been released.

CAUTION
• Use ample washer fluid when washing the windshield. The windshield should be thoroughly wet when the wipers are in operation.
• Before using the wipers, ice and snow should be removed from the windshield/rear window. Be sure the wiper blades are not frozen in place.

Headlight washers (certain models)
When the lever has been pulled, high pressure jets mounted in the bumper will spray the headlights.

The following applies to conserve washer fluid, see page 61 for information on the light switch positions:

Low/high beam headlights on
The headlights will be washed the first time the windshield is washed. Thereafter, the headlights will only be washed once for every five times the windshield is washed within a 10-minute period.

Parking lights on
Optional Bi-Xenon® headlights will be washed once for every five times the windshield is washed.
Normal halogen headlights will not be washed.
B – Rain sensor (option)

The rain sensor regulates windshield wiper speed according to the amount of water on the windshield. The sensitivity of the rain sensor is adjusted by moving the thumb wheel (C in the illustration on the previous page) up (the wipers will sweep the windshield more frequently) or down (the wipers will sweep the windshield less frequently).

**On/Off**
- Activating the rain sensor
  1. Switch on the ignition.
  2. Put the windshield wiper lever in position 0.
  3. Press button B (see page 70). The rain sensor symbol will appear in the lower display.

**Manual deactivation**
The rain sensor can be deactivated by:
- Pressing button (B).
- Moving the windshield wiper lever down.

**NOTE**
The rain sensor function will remain activated if the lever is briefly moved up to activate the "manual sweep" function.

**CAUTION**
The rain sensor should be deactivated when washing the car in an automatic car wash, etc. If the rain sensor function is left on, the wipers will start inadvertently in the car wash and could be damaged.

**Automatic deactivation**
The rain sensor is deactivated automatically in the following situations:
- When the key is removed from the ignition.
- Five minutes after the ignition is switched off if the key is left in the ignition.

C – Thumb wheel

The thumb wheel is used to set the wiper interval when intermittent wiping is selected, or the sensitivity to the amount of rain on the windshield when the rain sensor is selected. Move the wheel upward or downward to increase/decrease wiper speed when the intermittent function is selected, or to increase/decrease the optional rain sensor’s sensitivity when the this function is activated.

D – Tailgate wiper/washer

Press the lever forward to wipe and wash the tailgate window. The wiper will sweep the window several times after the lever has been released.

The button at the end of the lever has three positions:
- Intermittent wiping: Press in the upper section of the button.
- Normal wiper speed: Press in the lower section of the button.
- Neutral position: The wiper function is switched off.
Right-side steering wheel lever

Tailgate wiper and reverse gear
- If the front wipers are on and the transmission is put into reverse gear, the tailgate wiper will be activated.
- If the transmission is in reverse and the manual windshield wiper function is used (the lever is pushed upward), the tailgate wiper will also be activated for as long the lever is held up.
- If the tailgate wiper is already in normal wiping function, the normal wiping function will continue.
Steering wheel adjustment

Both the height and the reach of the steering wheel can be adjusted to a comfortable position for the driver.

1. Pull down the lever on the steering column to release the steering wheel.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to a suitable position.
3. Press the lever back into place to lock the steering wheel in the new position. If necessary, press the steering wheel slightly while pressing the lever into the locked position.

Check that the steering wheel is locked in the new position.

**WARNING**

Never adjust the steering wheel while driving.

Hazard warning flashers

The four-way flasher should be used to indicate that the vehicle has become a traffic hazard. To activate the flashers, press the triangular button in the center dash. Press the button again to turn off the flashers.

**NOTE**

- Regulations regarding the use of the hazard warning flasher may vary, depending on where you live.
- The hazard warning flashers will be activated automatically if an airbag deploys.
Parking brake

Parking brake (hand brake)

The parking brake lever is located between the front seats.

**NOTE**
The indicator light will illuminate even if the parking brake has only been partially applied.

**When applying the parking brake**
1. Press firmly on the brake pedal.
2. Pull the parking brake lever up firmly to its full extent.
3. Release the brake pedal and ensure that the vehicle is at a standstill.
4. If the vehicle rolls, the parking brake lever must be pulled more firmly.
5. When parking a vehicle always put the gear selector in first gear (for manual transmission) or P (for automatic transmission).

**Parking on a hill**
- If the vehicle is pointing uphill, turn the front wheels so that they point away from the curb.
- If the vehicle is pointing downhill, turn the front wheels so that they point toward the curb.

**Releasing the parking brake**
1. Press firmly on the brake pedal.
2. Pull the lever up slightly, press the button at the end of the lever and lower the lever completely.

**WARNING**
Pull up the parking brake lever up firmly to its full extent.
**Operation**

Lightly press down the front edge of any of the buttons (A or B) to the first detent ("stop") to open a window to the position of your choice.

***WARNING***
- Always remove the ignition key when the vehicle is unattended.
- Never leave children unattended in the vehicle.
- Make sure that the windows are completely unobstructed before they are operated.

- Press the front part of any of the buttons (A or B) as far down as possible and release to automatically open the window completely.
- To stop the window at any time, pull the button up.

***NOTE***
To reduce buffeting wind noise if the rear windows are opened, also open the front windows slightly.

**Closing a window**
- Lightly pull up the front edge of any of the buttons (A or B) to the first detent ("stop") to close a window to the position of your choice.
- Pull the front part of any of the buttons (A or B) up as far as possible and release to automatically close the window completely. To stop the window at any time, press the button down.

**Lockout switch for rear windows**

The electrically operated rear door windows can be disabled by a switch located on the driver's door (see illustration).

**Lockout switch**

The rear door windows can be raised or lowered by the switch located on the driver's door (see illustration).
Power windows

buttons on the rear door armrests or with the buttons on the driver's door armrest.

If the light in the switch is ON: The rear door windows can only be raised or lowered with the buttons on the driver's door.

Power window control – front passenger's side

The control for the power window in the front passenger’s door operates that window only.

Power window controls – rear doors

The rear door windows can be operated with the control on each door and with the switch on the driver’s door.
MIRRORS

Rearview mirror

1. Day/night control
2. Normal position
3. Night position, reduces glare from following traffic

Night position
To reduce glare from the headlights of following vehicles, use control (1) to switch between the normal and night-driving positions.

Auto-dim function (option)
An optional integrated sensor reacts to headlights from following traffic and automatically reduces glare.

Rearview mirror with compass (option)
The upper right-hand corner of the rearview mirror has an integrated display that shows the compass direction toward which the car is pointing. Eight different directions can be displayed: N, NE, E, SE, S, SW, W and NW. The display shows your car’s orientation with respect to true north.

Calibrating the compass
The earth is divided into 15 magnetic zones. The compass is initially set for the zone to which the car was delivered, and should always be adjusted if the car is driven to a new magnetic zone. A "C" will be displayed if calibration becomes necessary.

To calibrate the compass:
1. Stop the car in a large, open area, away from traffic.
2. Using a pen or similar object, hold the button (1) depressed for at least 6 seconds. "C" will be displayed.
Mirrors

3. Press button (1) for at least 3 seconds to display the number of the current magnetic zone.

4. Press button (1) repeatedly until the number for the required geographical area (1 – 15) is displayed. "C" will be displayed again.

5. Drive slowly in a circle at a maximum speed of 6 mph (10 km/h) until a compass direction is displayed. Calibration is complete.

Power door mirrors

The mirror control switches are located on the driver's door armrest.

Adjusting the mirrors

**WARNING**

- The mirrors should always be adjusted prior to driving.
- Objects seen in the passenger’s side wide-angle door mirror are closer than they appear to be.

Driver's door mirror:
- Press the L button (a light in the switch will go on) to activate the adjustment control.
  Use this control to adjust the driver’s door mirror.

Passenger’s door mirror:
1. Press the R switch (a light in the switch will go on) to activate the adjustment control.
  Use this control to adjust the passenger’s door mirror.
2. After you have adjusted the mirror(s), press the L or R switch again (the LED will go out) to deactivate the adjustment control.

Storing the mirrors’ position
The position of the door mirrors is stored when the vehicle is locked. The next time the driver’s door is unlocked with the same remote control and that door is opened within 2 minutes, the optional power driver’s seat and side door mirrors will automatically move to the position that they were in when the doors were most recently locked with the same remote control.

Folding power door mirrors (option on certain markets only)
The mirrors can be folded in for parking/driving in narrow spaces.
Folding the mirrors in
1. Press down the L and R mirror control buttons on the driver’s door at the same time.
2. Release them after approximately one second. The mirrors automatically fold in to the fully retracted position.

Folding the mirrors out
Fold out the mirrors by pressing down the L and R buttons at the same time. The mirrors automatically fold out to the fully extended position.

Automatic folding
When the vehicle is locked/unlocked with the remote control or with the optional keyless drive system (see page 123), the power door mirrors with automatically fold in or out.

NOTE
The door mirrors will not fold out automatically when the vehicle is unlocked if they were folded in using the buttons on the driver’s door control panel.

This function can be activated/deactivated in Personal settings (see page 82). In the menu system, go to Car settings ➔ Fold mirr. when locking.

Return to "neutral" position
If a mirror has been inadvertently moved (bumped in a parking lot, etc.) from its original (neutral) position, it must be moved back to this position before automatic folding will function again.

To so so:
1. Fold in the mirrors by pressing the L and R mirror control buttons on the driver’s door at the same time.
2. Fold them out again by pressing the L and R mirror control buttons.

This returns the mirrors to their original (neutral) positions.

Blind Spot Information System (BLIS) - option
The Blind Spot Information System (BLIS) is an information system that indicates the presence of another vehicle in the side-view mirror’s "blind area." See page 164 for detailed information.
To operate the moonroof, the ignition key must first be turned to the intermediate or drive position (position I, II or the engine running). The moonroof can be opened in two ways:

**Tilt position**
Open: Press the rear edge of the control upward to position 5.
Close: Pull the rear edge of the control down to position 6.

**Sliding moonroof**

**Auto open/close**
Open: Pull the switch as far back as possible (to position 1) and release it to automatically slide open the moonroof.
Close: Push the switch as far forward as possible (to position 4) and release it to automatically close the moonroof.

**Manual open/close**
Open: Pull the switch back to the first stop (position 2) and hold it until the moonroof has opened to the position of your choice.
Close: Push the switch forward to the first stop (position 3) and hold it until the moonroof has closed to the position of your choice, or has closed completely.

**NOTE**
If the moonroof is repeatedly obstructed during auto-close operation, an overload circuit breaker will temporarily halt moonroof function. The moonroof will return to normal function after a brief cool-down period.
CAUTION
- Remove ice and snow before opening the moonroof.
- Do not operate the moonroof if it is frozen closed.
- Never place heavy objects on the moonroof.

WARNING
- If the moonroof is obstructed during auto-close operation, it will automatically reverse direction and return to its starting position.
- During manual closing, if the moonroof is obstructed, immediately open it again.

WARNING
- Never open or close the moonroof if it is obstructed in any way.
- Never allow a child to operate the moonroof.
- Never extend any object or body part through the open moonroof, even if the vehicle’s ignition is completely switched off.
- Never leave a child alone in a vehicle.

The optional moonroof features a sliding visor. The visor slides open automatically when the moonroof is opened, and must be closed manually.
**Personal settings**

Personal settings can be made for some of the car's functions, such as the central locking system, climate control, and the audio system. Please refer to page 241 for more information on the audio functions that can be adjusted. The settings are presented in the display (A).

**To access the menu and adjust settings**

1. Press **MENU** (B).
2. Scroll to **Car Settings** using the menu navigation control (E).
3. Press **ENTER** (D).
4. Select an alternative using the menu navigation control (E).
5. Confirm your selection by pressing **ENTER**.

**To exit the menu**

Press **EXIT** (C).

**Available settings**

**Clock adjust**

To set the time:

1. Use the number keys or the up/down arrow keys on the navigation control (E) to change the hour or minute.
2. Select hour(s) or minute(s) to be changed with the left/right arrow keys.
3. Press **ENTER** to start the clock.

**NOTE**

If you are currently using the 12-hour time setting, use the up/down arrow keys to select **AM/PM** after the minute-setting has been adjusted.

**Lock confirmation light**

When the car is locked/unlocked with the remote control, the direction indicators can be selected to flash to confirm the action. The alternatives On/Off are available for both locking and unlocking.

**Autolock**

When the car starts to move, the doors and tailgate can be locked automatically. The alternatives On/Off are available.

**NOTE**

Pulling the handle twice on a door unlocks and opens that door.

**Unlock**

There are two alternatives for unlocking:
02 Instruments and controls

Personal settings

- Global (All doors) – unlocks all doors and the tailgate with one press on the remote control.
- Two Step (Two-stage unlocking) – This alternative unlocks the driver’s door with one press on the remote control. A second press unlocks the passenger’s door and the tailgate.

Automatically folding the door mirrors
The setting makes it possible to automatically fold the door mirrors in or out when the vehicle is locked or unlocked. See page 78.

Operating side windows
The following alternative can be selected for opening all side windows at the same time by pressing and holding the Unlock switch in either of the front doors (see page 127 for additional information) 1

NOTE
The ignition key must be in position I or higher (see page 143) before all side windows can be opened using the switches in the front doors.

- Auto open all windows On/Off

Temporarily turning off the alarm sensor(s)
The alarm sensors can be temporarily turned off (if, for example, a person or a pet remains in the vehicle when the doors are locked from outside with the remote control). There are two alternatives: Activate once and Ask on exit, see page 118 and 130.

Approach lighting
This alternative determines the length of time for which the car’s lights will remain on when the Approach light button on the central locking system’s remote control is pressed. Intervals of 30/60/90 seconds may be selected, see section “Remote control functions” for more information.

Home safe lighting
This alternative determines the length of time for which the car’s lights will remain on when the high beam lever on the steering column is pulled toward the wheel with the ignition switched off. Intervals of 30/60/90 seconds may be selected, see page 64 for information on using this function.

Information
- VIN number – The VIN (Vehicle Identification Number) is the car’s unique identity number.
- Number of Keys – the number of keys registered for the car is displayed here.

Climate functions
- Blower speed in AUTO mode – the blower speed can be set to AUTO mode in models equipped with ECC. Choose between “Low”, “Normal” and “High”.
- Timer for recirculation – when the timer is active, the air recirculates in the car for 3–12 minutes depending on the ambient temperature. Select On/Off depending on whether the recirculation timer is to be active or not.

Keyless locking and unlocking (option as available)
The following alternatives can be selected for locking and unlocking the doors and tailgate:
- All doors – all doors are locked or unlocked at the same time.
- Doors on the same side – front and rear doors on the same side are unlocked together.

1 This menu alternative also makes it possible to open all side windows by pressing and holding the Unlock button on the remote control for several seconds.
02 Instruments and controls

**Personal settings**

- Both front doors – both front doors are unlocked together.
- One front door – either of the front doors can be unlocked separately\(^2\).

**Reset to factory settings**

Use this alternative to return to the default climate system settings.

\(^2\) Factory default.
Introduction

The HomeLink Wireless Control System provides a convenient way to replace up to three hand-held radio-frequency (RF) transmitters used to activate devices such as gate operators, garage door openers, entry door locks, security systems, even home lighting. Additional HomeLink information can be found on the Internet at www.homelink.com.

WARNING

- If you use HomeLink to open a garage door or gate, be sure no one is near the gate or door while it is in motion.
- When programming a garage door opener, it is advised to park outside of the garage.
- Do not use HomeLink with any garage door opener that lacks safety stop and reverse features as required by U.S. federal safety standards (this includes any garage door opener model manufactured before April 1, 1982). A garage door that cannot detect an object - signaling the door to stop and reverse - does not meet current U.S. federal safety standards. For more information, contact HomeLink at: www.homelink.com.

Retain the original transmitter of the RF device you are programming for use in other vehicles as well as for future HomeLink programming. It is also suggested that upon the sale of the vehicle, the programmed HomeLink buttons be erased for security purposes. Refer to "Erasing HomeLink Buttons".

Programming HomeLink

NOTE

Some vehicles may require the ignition switch to be turned on or to the second ("accessories") position for programming and/or operation of HomeLink. It is also recommended that a new battery be placed in the hand-held transmitter of the device being programmed to HomeLink for quicker training and accurate transmission of the radio-frequency signal.

1. Position the end of your hand-held transmitter 1–3 inches (5–14 cm) away from the HomeLink button you wish to program while keeping the indicator light in view.

2. Simultaneously press and hold both the chosen HomeLink and hand-held transmitter buttons until the HomeLink indicator light changes from a slow to a rapidly blinking light. Now you may release both the HomeLink and hand-held transmitter buttons.
HomeLink® Wireless Control System (option)

**NOTE**

Some devices may require you to replace this Programming Step 2 with procedures noted in the “Gate Operator / Canadian Programming” section. If the HomeLink indicator light does not change to a rapidly blinking light after performing these steps, contact HomeLink at www.homelink.com.

3. Firmly press, hold for five seconds and release the programmed HomeLink button up to two separate times to activate the door. If the door does not activate, press and hold the just-trained HomeLink button and observe the indicator light.
   - If the indicator light stays on constantly, programming is complete and your device should activate when the HomeLink button is pressed and released.
   - If the indicator light blinks rapidly for two seconds and then turns to a constant light continue with “Programming” steps 4-6 to complete the programming of a rolling code equipped device (most commonly a garage door opener).

4. At the garage door opener receiver (motor-head unit) in the garage, locate the “learn” or “smart” button. This can usually be found where the hanging antenna wire is attached to the motor-head unit.

5. Firmly press and release the “learn” or “smart” button. (The name and color of the button may vary by manufacturer.) There are 30 seconds to initiate step 6.

6. Return to the vehicle and firmly press, hold for two seconds and release the programmed HomeLink button. Repeat the “press/hold/release” sequence a second time, and, depending on the brand of the garage door opener (or other rolling code equipped device), repeat this sequence a third time to complete the programming process.

HomeLink should now activate your rolling code equipped device.

**Gate Operator/Canadian Programming**

Canadian radio-frequency laws require transmitter signals to “time-out” (or quit) after several seconds of transmission – which may not be long enough for HomeLink to pick up the signal during programming. Similar to this Canadian law, some U.S. gate operators are designed to “time-out” in the same manner.

If you live in Canada or you are having difficulties programming a gate operator or garage door opener by using the “Programming” procedures, replace “Programming HomeLink” step 2 with the following:

- Continue to press and hold the HomeLink button while you press and release - every two seconds (“cycle”) your handheld transmitter until the HomeLink indicator light changes from a slow to a rapidly blinking light. Now you may release both the HomeLink and handheld transmitter buttons.

Proceed with “Programming” step 3 to complete.

**Using HomeLink**

To operate, simply press and release the programmed HomeLink button. Activation will now occur for the trained device (i.e., garage door opener, gate operator, security system, entry door lock, home/office lighting, etc.). For convenience, the hand-held transmitter of the device may also be used at any time. In the event that there are still programming difficulties or questions, contact HomeLink at: www.homelink.com.
Erasing HomeLink Buttons
To erase programming from the three HomeLink buttons (individual buttons cannot be erased but can be "reprogrammed" as outlined below), follow the step noted:

- Press and hold the two outer HomeLink buttons until the indicator light begins to flash after 10 seconds. Release both buttons. Do not hold for longer than 20 seconds. HomeLink is now in the train (or learning) mode and can be programmed at any time beginning with "Programming" - step 1.

Reprogramming a Single HomeLink Button
To program a device to HomeLink using a HomeLink button previously trained, follow these steps:

1. Press and hold the desired HomeLink button. **DO NOT** release the button.
2. The indicator light will begin to flash after 20 seconds. Without releasing the HomeLink button, proceed with "Programming" - step 1.

For questions or comments, contact HomeLink at: www.homelink.com or 1–800–355–3515.

This device complies with FCC rules part 15 and Industry Canada (IC) RSS-210. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference that may be received including interference that may cause undesired operation.

**NOTE**
The transmitter has been tested and complies with FCC and IC rules. Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user’s authority to operate the device.¹

HomeLink and the HomeLink house are registered trademarks of Johnson Controls, Inc.

¹ The term "IC:” before the certification/registration number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.
General information................................................................................. 90
Air vents.................................................................................................. 92
Manual climate control.......................................................................... 93
Electronic Climate Control (ECC) – option.............................................. 96
Air distribution......................................................................................... 99
CLIMATE
Air conditioning – A/C
Your car is equipped with a climate control system that includes either manually adjustable air conditioning or optional Electronic Climate Control (ECC).

The air conditioning system can be switched off, but for optimal air quality in the passenger compartment and to prevent the windows from fogging, the air conditioning should be left on – even in cool weather.

NOTE
In warm weather, a small amount of water may accumulate under the car when it has been parked. This water is condensation from the A/C system and is normal.

Ice and snow
Always keep the air intake grille at the base of the windshield free of snow.

Fog on the inside of the windows
The defroster function should be used to remove fog or mist from the inside of the windows. Keeping the windows clean with a commercially available window washing spray will also help prevent fogging or misting.

Climate control maintenance
Special tools and equipment are required to maintain and carry out repairs on the climate system. Work of this type should only be done by a trained and qualified Volvo service technician.

Refrigerant
Volvo cares about the environment. The air conditioning system in your car contains a CFC-free refrigerant – R134a. This substance will not deplete the ozone layer. The system contains 1.2 lbs (530 g) R134a (HFC 134a), and uses PAG oil.

Passenger compartment filter
Replace the cabin air filter with a new one at the recommended intervals. Please refer to your Warranty and Service Records Information booklet, or consult a trained and qualified Volvo service technician for these intervals. The filter should be replaced more often when driving under dirty and dusty conditions. The filter cannot be cleaned and therefore should always be replaced with a new one.

NOTE
There are different types of cabin air filters. Ensure that the correct type is installed.

Display
The display above the climate control panel shows the climate settings that have been made.

Personal settings
There are two functions in the climate system that can be set to your preferences:

- Blower speed to Auto mode (models with ECC only).
- Timer controlled recirculation of the air in the passenger compartment.
For information about how to make these settings, see the Personal settings section on page 82.

**Models equipped with ECC (option)**

**Sensors**
- The sunlight sensor is on the upper side of the dashboard
- The passenger compartment temperature sensor is located behind the climate system control panel.
- The ambient temperature sensor is in the driver’s side door mirror.
- The humidity sensor is in the rearview mirror.

These sensors should never be obstructed.

**NOTE**
The sunlight sensor monitors the side of the vehicle from which the sun shines into the passenger compartment. This means that the temperature may differ slightly between the left and right air vents, even if the climate system temperature is set to be the same for both sides of the passenger compartment.

**Side windows and optional moonroof**
The electronic climate control system will function best if the windows and moonroof are closed. If you drive with the windows or moonroof open, it may be preferable to manually adjust the temperature and blower control (the LED in the AUTO switch should be off).

**Acceleration**
The air conditioning system is temporarily switched off during full throttle acceleration.
Air vents

Air vents in the dashboard

Open
Closed
Horizontal air flow
Vertical air flow

Direct the outer air vents toward the side windows to defrost.
Manual climate system functions

1. Blower

The blower speed can be increased or decreased by turning the knob. If the knob is turned counterclockwise and the indicator light in the display goes out, the blower and the air conditioning are switched off. The display shows the blower symbol and **OFF**.

2. Recirculation

This function can be used to shut out exhaust fumes, smoke, etc from the passenger compartment. The air in the passenger compartment is then recirculated, i.e. no air from outside the car is taken into the car when this function is activated. Recirculation (together with the air conditioning system) cools the passenger compartment more quickly in very warm weather. If the air in the car recirculates for too long, there is a risk of condensation forming on the insides of the windows, especially in winter.
**Manual climate control**

### Timer
The timer function minimizes the risk of misting, or stale air when the recirculation function is selected, see page 82 for information on setting the recirculation timer. Recirculation is always disengaged when you select Defroster (3).

### 3. Defroster
Directs airflow to the windshield and side windows and increases blower speed.

When the defroster is activated:
- Air flows to the windows at high blower speed.
- The LED in the defroster button lights up when this function is activated. The air conditioning system is controlled to provide maximum air dehumidification.
- The air conditioning is automatically switched on (can be switched off by pressing button 5).

### 4. Airflow controls
Press one of the three buttons in the illustration to activate the selected airflow. A symbol in the display above the climate control panel and a lit LED in the selected button indicate that the manual function has been selected. With manually selected airflow both warm and cool air can be selected. The desired temperature is selected using control 9.

### 5. A/C – On or Off
- **ON**: The air conditioning system is engaged when the ON light is lit.
- **OFF**: The system is disengaged when the OFF lights up.

If Defroster (3) is activated the air conditioning is always engaged.

### 6/7. Heated front seats (option)

#### Maximum heating
- Press the button once – both LEDs light up.

#### Reduced heating
- Press the button a second time – one LED lights up.

#### Seat heating off
- Press the button a third time – no LEDs are lit.

### 8. Heated rear window and door mirrors
Press to defrost the rear window and door mirrors.

The rear window and door mirrors are defrosted simultaneously if the switch is pressed once. The defrost function is active if the LED in the switch is illuminated.
- The function can be switched off manually by pressing the button.
- The defrost function switches off automatically after 12–20 minutes, depending on the outside temperature.

**NOTE**
On certain markets, the defrost function may remain on longer than 20 minutes in cold weather to help keep the rear window free from ice or condensation.
Manual climate control

9. Temperature selector

The knob with the thermometer symbol is used to select cooling or heating for both the driver’s and passenger’s sides of the car.
**Electronic Climate Control (ECC) – option**

**1. Auto – On/Off**

The **AUTO** function automatically regulates climate control to maintain the desired temperature. The automatic function controls heating, air conditioning, blower speed, recirculation, and air distribution.

If you select one or more manual functions, the remaining functions continue to be controlled automatically. All manual settings are switched off when **AUTO** is switched on. **AUTO CLIMATE** is shown in the display.

**2. Blower speed**

The blower speed can be increased or decreased by turning the knob. The blower speed is regulated automatically if **AUTO** is selected. The previously set blower speed is disconnected.

**NOTE**

If the knob is turned counterclockwise and the blower indication in the display goes out, the blower and the air conditioning are switched off. The display shows the blower symbol and **OFF**.
3. Recirculation
This function can be used to shut out exhaust fumes, smoke, etc from the passenger compartment. The air in the passenger compartment is then recirculated, i.e. no air from outside the car is taken into the car when this function is activated.

If the air in the car recirculates for too long, there is a risk of condensation forming on the insides of the windows, especially in winter.

Timer
The timer function minimizes the risk of fogging or stale air when the recirculation function is selected, see page 82 for information on setting the recirculation timer.

NOTE
Recirculation is always disengaged if the defroster button is engaged to clear ice or condensation from the side windows.

4. Defroster
Directs airflow to the windshield and side windows and increases blower speed. When the defroster is activated:

- Air flows to the windows at high blower speed.
- The LED in the defroster button lights up when this function is activated. The air conditioning system is controlled to provide maximum air dehumidification.
- The air conditioning is automatically switched on (can be switched off by pressing button 6).

The air is not recirculated.

5. Airflow controls
Press one of the three buttons in the illustration to activate the selected airflow. A symbol in the display above the climate control panel and a lit LED in the selected button indicate that the manual function has been selected. With manually selected airflow both warm and cool air can be selected. See also the table on page 97.

6. Air conditioning On/Off
ON: The air conditioning system is engaged when the ON light is lit and is controlled automatically by the system to maintain the selected temperature.

OFF: The system is disengaged when the OFF lights up

When OFF is selected and the OFF LED is lit, the air conditioning system is deactivated. Other functions are still controlled automatically.

When Defroster (4) is selected, the air conditioning system is activated for maximum dehumidifying.

7 and 8. Heated front seats (option)
Maximum heating: Press the button once – both LEDs light up.
Reduced heating: Press the button a second time – one LED lights up.
Seat heating off: Press the button a third time – no LEDs are lit.
9. Rear window and door mirror defrosters

Press to defrost the rear window and door mirrors. The rear window and door mirrors are defrosted simultaneously if the switch is pressed once. The defrost function is active if the LED in the switch is illuminated.

- The function can be switched off manually by pressing the button.
- The defrost function switches off automatically after 12–20 minutes, depending on the outside temperature.

**NOTE**
- On certain markets, the defrost function may remain on longer than 20 minutes in cold weather to help keep the rear window free from ice or condensation.

10. Temperature selector

The temperatures on the driver’s and passenger’s sides can be set separately using the knob (with the thermometer in it). The temperature can be set for both sides of the car when the ignition is switched on (both LEDs will be on), which means that a temperature setting will apply to both sides of the car.

To set the temperature on one side of the car:

1. Press the knob once. The LED for one side of the car will light up. Turn the knob to adjust the temperature.
2. Press the knob a second time to set the temperature on the opposite side of the car.
3. Press the knob a third time to set the temperature on both sides of the car at the same time.

**NOTE**
- Selecting a temperature that is higher or lower than necessary will not heat or cool the passenger compartment faster.
### Air distribution

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Air distribution</th>
<th>Use:</th>
<th>Air distribution</th>
<th>Use:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| ![Icon](defroster.png) | Defroster.  
Air is not recirculated in this mode.  
Air conditioning is always engaged.  
There is also a certain amount of airflow to the panel air vents. | ![Icon](airfloor.png) | Air to the floor and windows.  
There is also a certain amount of airflow to the dashboard air vents.  
For comfortable conditions and good defrosting in cold weather.  
Medium to high blower speed. |
| ![Icon](defrost.png) | Air to windshield and front side windows.  
There is also a certain amount of airflow to the dashboard air vents. | ![Icon](airfloor.png) | Air to the floor and from the dashboard air vents.  
For sunny weather with cool ambient temperatures. |
| ![Icon](window.png) | Air to the windows and from the dashboard air vents. | ![Icon](airfloor.png) | Air to the floor.  
There is a certain amount of airflow to the dashboard and window air vents.  
To warm the feet. |
| ![Icon](head.png) | Airflow directed to the head and chest from the dashboard air vents. | ![Icon](airfloor.png) | Airflow to the windows, dashboard air vents, and floor.  
For cooler air toward the feet, or for warmer air toward the head and chest. |

For good comfort in warm, dry weather.  
Prevents fogging in cold or humid weather (blower speed should be moderate to high).
The driver’s and passenger’s seats can be adjusted in a number of ways to provide a comfortable driving and sitting position.

1. **Forward-rearward:** Pull the lever up and slide the seat to the position of your choice.
2. Use this control to raise or lower the front edge of the seat cushion.
3. Use this control to raise or lower the rear edge of the seat cushion.
4. Turn this knob (option on some passenger’s seats) to adjust the firmness of the lumbar support.\(^1\)

\(^1\) Also applies to the optional power seat.

---

**WARNING**

- Do not adjust the seat while driving.
- Adjust the driver’s seat and seat belt (see page 18) before driving. The seat should be adjusted so that the brake pedal can be depressed fully.
- Position the seat as far rearward as comfort and control allow.

---

**Folding down the front seat backrests**

The front passenger’s seat backrest can be folded down to provide room for long loads.

1. Move the seat as far back as possible.
2. Adjust the backrest to the upright position.
3. Lift the catches on the rear of the backrest as shown in the illustration.
4. Without releasing the catches, push the backrest forward.
5. Move the seat as far forward as possible so that the head restraint slides under the glove compartment.
Power seats (option)
The power driver’s seat can be adjusted:
- If the ignition key is in position I or II.
- During a 10 minute period after the doors have been unlocked if the door remains open.
- If the door is closed and the ignition key is not yet in the ignition, or if the key is in position 0, the seat can be adjusted or during a period of 40 seconds. The power passenger’s seat can only be adjusted if the ignition key is in position I or II, or if the engine is running.

WARNING
Cover sharp edges on the load to help prevent injury to occupants. Secure the load to help prevent shifting during sudden stops.

Adjusting the seat

Seat adjustment controls
Seat adjustment controls 1, 2, 3, and 4 on the side of the seat can be used to move the seat to the position of your choice.

1. Move this section of the control up or down to raise/lower the front section of the seat cushion.
2. Move the control forward/rearward to move the seat forward or rearward.
3. Move this section of the control up or down to raise/lower the rear section of the seat cushion.
4. Backrest tilt.

NOTE
The power seats have an overload protector that activates if a seat is blocked by any object. If this occurs, switch off the ignition (key in position 0) and wait for approximately 20 seconds before operating the seat again.

Emergency stop
If the seat inadvertently begins to move, press any of the buttons to stop the seat.

Programming the seat memory, driver’s seat only (option)

Power seat memory buttons
Three different seating positions can be stored in the seat's memory. The memory buttons are located on the outboard side of the driver's seat (see the illustration above). The following example explains how memory button 1 can be programmed. Buttons 2 and 3 can be programmed in the same way.

To program (store) a seat position in memory button 1:
1. Adjust the seat to the desired position.
2. Press and hold down the "M" (Memory) button.
3. With the "M" button depressed, press memory button 1 to store the seat's current position.

To move the seat to the position that it was in when memory button 1 was programmed, press and hold down button 1 until the seat stops moving.

As a safety precaution, the seat will stop automatically if the button is released before the seat has reached the preset position.

**Central locking system remote control and driver's seat memory**

The remote control transmitter can also be equipped with an optional function that controls the electrically operated driver's seat in the following way:

1. Adjust the seat to the desired position.
2. When you leave the car, lock it using the remote control.
3. The next time the driver's door is unlocked with the same remote control and that door is opened within 2 minutes, the driver's seat and side door mirrors will automatically move to the position that they were in when the doors were most recently locked with the same remote control.

**NOTE**
The memory function in the remote control operates independently of the memory function in the seat.

**WARNING**
- Because the driver's seat can be adjusted with the ignition off, children should never be left unattended in the car.
- Movement of the seat can be STOPPED at any time by pressing any button on the power seat control panel.
- Do not adjust the seat while driving. The seat should be adjusted so that the brake pedal can be depressed fully. In addition, position the seat as far rearward as comfort and control allow.
- The seat rails on the floor must not be obstructed in any way when the seat is in motion.
**Interior lighting**

- Press the left side of the button: the interior courtesy lighting turns on.
- Neutral position: the interior courtesy lighting comes on when a door is opened, and is switched off 10 seconds after the door is closed.
- Press the right side of the button: the interior courtesy lighting stays off.

**Courtesey lighting - automatic function**

The interior lighting has a built-in automatic function that switches on the courtesy lighting for 30 seconds when:

- the car is unlocked from the outside using the key or remote control
- the engine is switched off and the ignition key is turned to the 0 position.

The courtesy lighting lights up or remains on for 5 minutes when:

- one of the doors is opened and left open.
- the courtesy lighting has not been switched off (the right side of button 2 depressed).

The automatic lighting goes out when:

- the engine is started
- the car is locked from the outside using the key or remote control.

If the courtesy lighting is not switched off manually, it will be turned off automatically 5 minutes after the engine has been switched off.

**Footwell lighting**

The footwell (and courtesy lighting) comes on or goes off when one of the side doors is opened or closed.

**Rear reading lights**

- Rear driver’s side reading light, on/off
- Rear passenger’s side reading light, on/off
Interior lighting

The rear reading lights can be switched on or off by pressing the respective buttons, and function if the ignition key is in positions I, II, or if the engine is running.

The courtesy lighting can be switched on or off within 30 minutes after the engine has been switched off, or after a door has been opened or closed.

These lights switch off automatically 5 minutes after the engine has been switched off.

Vanity mirror

Raise the cover to switch on the light.
04 Interior

Storage compartments

1. [Image of storage compartment 1]
2. [Image of storage compartment 2]
3. [Image of storage compartment 3]
4. [Image of storage compartment 4]
5. [Image of storage compartment 5]
6. [Image of storage compartment 6]
7. [Image of storage compartment 7]
8. [Image of storage compartment 8]
04 Interior

Storage compartments

1. Storage pocket (on the rear side of the front seats)
2. Compartment in door panel
3. Storage pocket (on the front side of the front seat cushion)
4. Glove compartment
5. Storage compartment for e.g., CDs and cup holders
6. Jacket hanger (intended for light garments only)
7. Rear seat storage compartment and cup holders
8. Storage pocket (on the front side of the rear, center seat cushion).

**WARNING**

- Anchor any heavy objects to prevent them from moving during sudden stops.
- Packages on the rear parcel shelf can obscure vision and may become dangerous projectiles in the event of a sudden stop or an accident.

**Glove compartment**

The owners manual and maps can be stored here. There are also holders for coins, pens and fuel cards. The glove compartment can only be locked and unlocked using the detachable key blade from the central locking system’s remote control. See page 120 for information on removing the key blade from the remote control, and page 127 for information about locking the glove compartment.

**Jacket hanger**

The jacket hanger is located on the inboard side of the front passenger’s seat head restraint. It is only intended for hanging light garments.
There are two storage compartments under the front, center armrest.

- Press the smaller button on the front edge of the armrest and lift the armrest cover to access a shallow storage compartment.
- Press the larger button and lift the entire armrest to access a deeper compartment.

The deep storage compartment has room for 10 CD jewel cases. These cases must be inserted with their spines upward in order to allow space for 10 cases in the storage compartment.

Two cup holders are located under the sliding cover in the center console.

The cup holders can be lifted out if necessary. To do so, grasp the indentation on the rear edge of the cup holder and lift.

To put the cup holder back in place:
1. Slide the two locating tabs in the front side of the cup holder into the two corresponding recesses in the center console storage space.
2. Press down the rear edge of the cup holder.

To close the sliding cover, grasp the underside of the front edge and pull.
Storage compartments

Storage compartment behind the gear lever

If the buttons for optional equipment are not installed, the recess behind the gear lever can be used as a storage compartment for coins, etc.
Rear seat head restraints

Each of the rear seat head restraints can be adjusted vertically to suit the height of the passenger. The upper edge of the head restraint should be on a level with the midpoint of the rear side of the passenger’s head (see illustration).

**WARNING**
The center rear seat head restraint should only be in its lowest position when this seat is NOT occupied. When the center position is occupied, the head restraint should be correctly adjusted to the passenger’s height.

- **To raise:** Slide the head restraint up to the desired height.
- **To lower:** Press the catch at the base of the right support and press the head restraint down.
- **To remove:** Pull the head restraint up far as possible. Press the catch at the base of the right support and pull the head restraint out of its holders.

**Folding down the rear seat backrests**

Both sections of the rear seat backrest can be folded down, together or separately, to enable you to transport long objects. Before folding down the rear seat backrests, the outboard seat belts can be attached to the clothes hook as shown in the illustration.

**NOTE**
When the seat backs are folded down, the head restraints may be damaged if they are not removed. The center head restraint must also be removed when transporting heavy loads.
Rear seat

To fold down one or both sections:

1. Grasp the rear edge of the seat cushion and pull it forward.
2. Pull the catch on the upper outboard edge of the backrest upward and forward to release the backrest lock. A red lock indicator is visible when the backrest is not locked in the upright position.
3. Fold the backrest down partially and remove the outboard head restraints. Press the center head restraint down completely or remove it.
4. Place the head restraints in the plastic tubes, which are now accessible on the under side of the seat cushions.

NOTE

When folding down the rear seat backrests, remove the plug in the rear 12 volt socket to help avoid marks in the upholstery.

WARNING

- The red lock indicator is VISIBLE when the backrest is NOT locked in position and hidden when the backrest is correctly locked in place. When the backrest is in the upright position, it must always be correctly locked in place.
- When the rear seat is folded down, do not place heavy objects against the backs of the front seats. This places a severe strain on the folded down backrest of the rear seat. Be sure to secure cargo.
- Cargo must not be stacked higher than the top of seat backs. This will reduce the possibility of luggage, etc. becoming projectiles during sudden maneuvers, rapid braking or an accident.
The steel grid prevents cargo from being thrown forward into the passenger area in the event of sudden braking.

Folding up the grid
When it is not in use, the grid can be folded up against the ceiling’s headliner:
1. Grasp the lower arch of the grid.
2. Pull it rearward and upward, and release it.
   The struts prevent the grid from falling.
3. Lower the grid by pulling down on the arch.

Removing the grid
To remove the grid from the vehicle:
1. Fold down the rear seat backrests slightly to the release pressure on the grid’s struts.
2. Remove the covers over the nuts holding the grid on each side.
3. Loosen the nuts until the threads are flush with the edge of the nuts.
4. Turn the grid slightly rearward so that it is clear of the upholstery. Do not angle the grid too much as it can become wedged in place and be difficult to remove.
5. Perform the same procedure on the opposite side of the grid, and then lift the grid out of the vehicle.

Installing the grid
To reinstall the grid, perform the procedures above in reverse order.
If you are uncertain about removing or installing the grid, please contact your Volvo retailer.

Cargo area cover (option)

Putting the cargo area in place
Pull out the cargo area cover and hook it in the grooves in the rear cargo area pillars (see illustration above).

Installing the cargo area cover
1. Position the end of the cover over the retaining holes in the cargo area near the rear seat backrest.
2. Press the button on the upper side of the cargo area cover forward to release the catches.
3. Press the end of the cargo area cover into place.
**Cargo area**

4. Release the button to lock the cargo area cover in place.
5. Repeat this procedure on the opposite side of the cargo area.

Check that the cargo area cover is securely in place.

---

**NOTE**

Both versions of the cargo area cover are options that may be available for your vehicle. Consult your Volvo retailer.

---

**Cargo area net (accessory)**

The Volvo V50 can be equipped with a cargo area net made of strong nylon fabric that can be used with the rear seat backrests in the upright position or folded down.

The holder for the retractable net is mounted on the rear side of the backrests.

**Using the net with the backrests in the upright position**

1. From the cargo compartment, pull the net upward.
2. Insert the net’s right attachment in the rearmost hole in the mounting bracket (see illustration) and push it forward into the smaller hole in the bracket to secure it in place.
3. Pull out the spring-loaded attachment on the left side of the net and insert it in the bracket on the left side of the vehicle in the same way.

**WARNING**

Be sure that the net is securely attached in the mounting brackets.

**Using the cargo net with the backrest folded down**

Fasten the net in the same way as described above, using the front mounting brackets.
Retracting the cargo net
1. Pull back one of the net’s attachments to the large hole in the mounting bracket.
2. Pull the attachment out of the mounting bracket.
3. Do the same on the opposite side of the vehicle.
4. Lower the net into its holder.

Removing the cargo net’s holder
1. Fold down the backrests
2. Push the holder out until it releases from its retaining brackets.

Using the net with the cargo area cover
1. Fold the rear seat backrests forward slightly. Begin by folding the narrower section of the backrest.
2. Pull the cargo net up and to the rear.
3. Return the backrests to the upright position.

WARNING
The red lock indicator on the rear seat backrests is VISIBLE when the backrest is NOT locked in position and hidden when the backrest is correctly locked in place. When the backrest is in the upright position, it must always be correctly locked in place.

Load anchoring eyelets
The eyelets in the cargo area can be used to fasten accessory load and lashing straps, load nets, and other load anchors.
LOCKS AND ALARM
Locks and alarm

Remote control and key blade

Remote controls
Two remote controls that also function as ignition keys are provided with your car. The remote controls contain detachable metal key blades for manually locking or unlocking the driver’s door and the glove compartment.

USA – FCC ID: LTQVO315TX
This device complies with part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Canada – IC: 3659AVO315TX
Operation is subject to the following conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Loss of a remote control
If either of the remote controls is lost, the other must be taken with the car to a Volvo retailer. As an anti-theft measure, the code of the lost remote control must be erased from the system.

Each key blade has a unique code, which is used if new key blades are required. A maximum of six remote controls/key blades can be programmed and used for one car.

Immobilizer (start inhibitor)
Each of the keys supplied with your car contains a coded transponder. The code in the key is transmitted to an antenna in the ignition switch where it is compared to the code stored in the start inhibitor module. The car will start only with a properly coded key. If you misplace a key, take the other keys to an authorized Volvo retailer for reprogramming as an anti-theft measure.

USA – FCC ID: LTQWFS 125VO
This device complies with part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following condition: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Canada – IC: 3659A-WFS125VO
Operation is subject to the following conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

CAUTION
Never use force on the narrow section of the remote control – this is where the transponder is located. The car cannot be started if the transponder is damaged.

Remote control functions

1 Lock – Press the Lock button on the remote once to lock all doors and the tailgate. The turn signals will flash once to confirm locking.
05 Locks and alarm

Remote control and key blade

1 NOTE
The car can also be locked if a door is open (does not apply to vehicles with the optional keyless drive).

2 Unlock – Press the Unlock button on the remote once to unlock the driver’s door. After a short pause, press the Unlock button a second time within 10 seconds to unlock the other doors and the tailgate. A long press (at least two seconds) opens all side windows.

3 Approach lighting – As you approach the car: Press the button on the remote control to illuminate the area around the car in dark conditions. Pressing the button once lights up the interior lighting, parking lights, and license plate lighting. These lights will switch off automatically after 30, 60 or 90 seconds. See the Personal settings page 82 for information about adjusting the time setting.

4 Unlock tailgate – Press the button once to disarm the alarm system and unlock only the tailgate. After closing, the tailgate will not automatically relock. Press Lock to relock it and rearm the alarm.

5 Panic alarm – This button can be used to attract attention during emergency situations. To activate the panic alarm, press and hold the red button for at least 3 seconds or press it twice within 3 seconds. The turn signals and horn will be activated. The panic alarm will stop automatically after 30 seconds. To deactivate, wait approximately 5 seconds and press the red button again.

NOTE
• The turn signals flash to confirm that the vehicle has been correctly locked/unlocked with the remote control or the optional keyless drive. When locking the vehicle, the turn signals will flash a confirmation only if all the doors are securely closed and locked. Flashing confirmation for locking and unlocking may be customized in the vehicle’s Personal settings menu, see page 82 for more information.
• The two-step unlocking function can be changed so that one press of the Unlock button unlocks all of the doors and the tailgate. See Personal settings page 82 for more information.

• Automatic relocking: If the doors are unlocked, the locks will automatically reengage (re-lock) and the alarm will rearm after 2 minutes unless a door or the tailgate has been opened.
• Automatic locking: When the car starts to move, the doors and tailgate can be locked automatically. This feature can be turned on or off, see Personal settings on page 82 for more information.
• Airbag deployment will automatically attempt to unlock the doors.

NOTE
This function will not open the tailgate.
05 Locks and alarm

Remote control and key blade

NOTE
This button will NOT unlock the car.

Weak battery in the remote control

Replacing the battery in the remote control
If the range of the transmitter is noticeably reduced, this indicates that the battery (type CR 2450, 3V) is weak and should be replaced. To replace the battery:

1. Place the remote control with the keypad downward. Pry open the cover with a small slotted screwdriver.
2. Remove the cover.

CAUTION
When replacing the battery, avoid touching the electrical circuitry in the other half of the remote control.

3. Note how the + and – sides of the battery are positioned on the inside of the cover (see the underside of the cover).
4. Pry out and replace the battery. Avoid touching the battery and its contact surfaces with your fingers.
5. Press the cover back into place.

The old battery should be disposed of properly at a recycling center or by a trained and qualified Volvo service technician.

Key blade

Removing the key blade

The key blade can be removed from the remote control. When removed, it can be used as follows:
- To lock/unlock the driver’s door
- To lock/unlock the glove compartment, see page 127

Removing the key blade

1. Slide the spring loaded catch to the side.
2. While holding the catch, pull the key blade out of the remote control.

When the battery begins to lose its charge, the Information symbol in the instrument panel (see page 53) lights up and KEY BATTERY LOW VOLTAGE is shown in the information display.

Removing the key blade

Slide the spring loaded catch to the side.

While holding the catch, pull the key blade out of the remote control.
Remote control and key blade

Reinserting the key blade in the remote control
1. Hold the remote control with the pointed end down.
2. Carefully slide the key blade into its groove.
3. Gently press the key blade in the groove until it clicks into place.

Unlocking the doors with the detached key blade
- Insert the key blade as far as possible in the driver's door lock. Turn the key blade clockwise approximately one-quarter turn to unlock the driver's door only.

**NOTE**
After unlocking the driver's door with the key blade, opening the door will trigger the alarm.

To disable the alarm
Press the Unlock button on the remote control, or insert the key in the ignition switch.

Locking the doors with the detached key blade
1. Lock the other door(s) by pressing the lock button on each door. Please note that this does not arm the alarm or lock the tailgate.
2. Turn the key blade one-quarter turn counter-clockwise to lock the driver's door.
05 Locks and alarm

Remote control and key blade

Locking points

1. Locking/unlocking points for the remote control with the key blade
2. Locking/unlocking points for the remote control without the key blade

By utilizing the remote control with the key blade removed, you can block access to the glove compartment for e.g. valet parking or when the car is brought to the retailer for service.
Keyless locking and unlocking

Both of the remote controls provided with the vehicle have the keyless function, and additional remotes can be ordered. The system can accommodate up to six keyless drive remote controls.

NOTE
The buttons on the keyless drive remote control can also be used to lock and unlock the vehicle, see page 118 for more information.

Unlocking the vehicle
- A keyless drive remote control must be on the same side of the vehicle as the door to be opened, and be within 5 feet (1.5 meters) of the lock or the tailgate opening control (see the shaded areas in the illustration).
- Pull a door handle to unlock and open the door or press the tailgate opening control on the tailgate.
- See page 146 for information on starting a vehicle equipped with keyless drive.

Locking the vehicle

The doors and the tailgate can be locked by pressing the lock button in any of the outside door handles.

NOTE
- If one or more doors and/or the tailgate is not fully closed when the lock button is pressed, the door(s) or tailgate will not be locked.
- On keyless drive vehicles with an automatic transmission, the gear selector must be in the Park (P) position and the ignition must be switched off before the doors/tailgate can be locked.
Locking or unlocking the vehicle with the key blade

The driver's door on vehicles equipped with keyless drive can be locked or unlocked with the remote control's detachable key blade if necessary, see page 120 for information on removing the key blade from the remote control. To access the keyhole in the driver's door:

- Pry off the keyhole cover by inserting the key blade or a small screwdriver in the hole on the underside of the cover (indicated by the arrow in the inset illustration).
- Insert the key blade as far as possible in the driver's door lock. Turn the key blade clockwise approximately one-quarter turn to unlock the driver's door only. This will trigger the alarm.

**To disable the alarm:** Press the Unlock button on the keyless drive remote control. If the batteries in the remote are weak, remove the keyless drive start control from the ignition switch by pressing the catch (see the illustration on page 146) and pulling the control out of the ignition switch. Insert the ignition key section of a keyless drive remote control in the ignition switch.

**Keyless drive remote control and driver's seat memory**

This function is only available on vehicles equipped with the optional power driver's seat.

- When you leave the car with a keyless drive remote control in your possession and lock any door, the position of the driver's seat will be stored in the seat's memory.
- The next time a door is opened by a person with the same remote control in his/her possession, the driver's seat will automatically move to the position that it was in when the door was most recently locked.

**NOTE**

If several people carrying keyless drive remote controls approach the vehicle at the same time, the driver's seat will assume the position it was in for the person who opens a door first.

**Keyless drive information messages**

If anyone leaves the vehicle with the only keyless drive remote control in his or her possession while the ignition is switched on, a message will be shown in the information display and an audible signal will sound.

**NOTE**

This message will only be displayed if the start control is in position I or II.

The message will be erased from the display and the audible signal will stop when the remote control has been returned to the vehicle and one of the following has occurred:

- A door has been opened and closed
- The start control has been turned to position 0
- The READ button (see page 58 for the location of this button) has been pressed.
05 Locks and alarm

Keyless drive (option as available)

CAUTION

- Keyless drive remote controls should never be left in the vehicle. In the event of a break-in, a remote found in the vehicle could make it possible to start the engine.
- Electromagnetic fields or metal obstructions can interfere with the keyless drive system. Avoid placing the remote control near cellular phones, metallic objects or e.g., in a metal brief-case.

CAUTION

- Keyless drive remote controls should never be left in the vehicle. In the event of a break-in, a remote found in the vehicle could make it possible to start the engine.
- Electromagnetic fields or metal obstructions can interfere with the keyless drive system. Avoid placing the remote control near cellular phones, metallic objects or e.g., in a metal brief-case.

Canada – IC:267T- 5WK48952,
267T- 5WK48964, 267T-5WK48891

NOTE

This device complies with RSS -210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

CAUTION

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the manufacturer could void the user’s authority to operate the equipment.

Siemens VDO
5WK48891

Tested To Comply With FCC Standards
For Automobile Use

Location of the keyless drive antennas

The keyless drive system has a number of antennas located at various points in the vehicle.

1. On the inside center of the rear bumper
2. Left rear door handle
3. Under the floor of the cargo area, near the rear seat
4. Right rear door handle
5. Under the rear section of the center console
6. Under the front section of the center console
05 Locks and alarm

Keyless drive (option as available)

WARNING
People with implanted pacemakers should not allow the pacemaker to come closer than 9 inches (22 cm) to any of the keyless drive system’s antennas. This is to help prevent interference between the pacemaker and the keyless drive system.
Locking/unlocking the vehicle from the inside

The switches near the door opening handles on the driver's and front passenger's doors can be used to lock or unlock all doors and the tailgate, open the side windows\(^1\), and to set the alarm.

- **Unlocking**: Press the upper section of the switch. A long press (for several seconds) also opens all the side windows.
- **Locking**: Press the lower section of the lock button.

\(^1\) This function must be set to On in the Personal settings menu (see page 83)

**NOTE**

- The ignition key must be in position I or higher (see page 143) before all side windows can be opened using the switches in the front doors.
- The doors cannot be opened by pulling up the lock buttons.
- Each door can also be locked manually using the lock button on that particular door. This applies only if the car has not been locked from the outside.
- The doors can also be unlocked (and the door opened) by pulling the handle in the door twice.

Locking the glove compartment

The glove compartment can only be locked and unlocked using the detachable key blade on the remote control, see page 120 for information on removing the key blade from the remote control.

1. Insert the key blade in the glove compartment lock.
2. Turn the key blade 90 degrees clockwise. The key slot will be in the horizontal position.
3. Remove the key blade from the lock.
Unlock the glove compartment in the reverse order.
Manual child safety locks, rear doors

The controls are located on the rear inside edges of the doors, and are only accessible when the doors are open.

1. Remove the key blade from the remote control, see page 120.
2. Turn the control with the key blade.
   
   - The door cannot be opened from the inside.
   - The door can be opened from the inside.
05 Locks and alarm

Alarm (option)

The alarm system
The alarm is automatically armed whenever the car is locked with the remote control, or if a front lock button is depressed.

When armed, the alarm continuously monitors a number of points on the car. The following conditions will trigger the alarm:
- The hood is forced open.
- The tailgate is forced open.
- A door is forced open.
- The ignition switch is tampered with.
- An attempt is made to start the car with a non-approved key (a key not coded to the car’s ignition).
- If there is movement in the passenger compartment (if the car is equipped with the optional movement sensor).
- The car is lifted or towed (if the car is equipped with the optional inclination sensor).
- The battery is disconnected (while the alarm is armed).
- The siren is disconnected when the alarm is disarmed.

The alarm indicator light
The status of the alarm system is indicated by the indicator light on at the top of the dashboard (see the illustration):
- Indicator light off – the alarm is not armed
- The indicator light flashes every two seconds – the alarm is armed
- The indicator light flashes rapidly before the ignition is switched on – the alarm has been triggered. The message “ALARM TRIGGERED, CHECK CAR” will also be displayed.

Fault in the alarm system: If a fault has been detected in the alarm system, a message will be shown in the information display. Contact your Volvo retailer to have the alarm system inspected and repaired if necessary.

Arming the alarm
Press the LOCK button on the remote control, or press the central lock button on one of the front doors with the door open. One long flash of the turn signals will confirm that the alarm is armed.

Disarming the alarm
Press the UNLOCK button on the remote control or insert the key in the ignition1 to disarm the alarm. Two short flashes from the car’s direction indicators confirm that the alarm has been deactivated and that all doors are unlocked.

1 On vehicles with the optional keyless drive, press in the start control in the ignition switch.
Turning off (stopping) the alarm
If the alarm is sounding, it can be stopped by pressing the UNLOCK button on the remote control or by inserting the key in the ignition switch. The driver’s door must first be unlocked with the key blade.

NOTE
On vehicles equipped with the optional keyless drive, the start control must be removed from the ignition switch before the key can be inserted, see page 146 for instructions.

Audible/visual alarm signal
An audible alarm signal is given by a battery powered siren. The alarm cycle lasts for 30 seconds.

NOTE
The visual alarm signal is given by flashing all turn signals and turning on the interior lighting for approximately 5 minutes.

Temporarily turning off the accessory alarm sensor(s)

In certain situations it may be desirable to turn off the accessory inclination and movement alarm sensors if, for example, you drive your vehicle onto a ferry where the rocking of the boat could trigger the alarm or if a pet is left in the vehicle with the doors locked.

To do so:
1. Press MENU to enter the menu system and scroll to Car settings (for a more detailed description of the menus, see page 82.
2. Select Reduced guard
3. Select Activate once and the message Reduced guard – See manual will appear in the information display. The alarm sensors will be turned off when the vehicle is locked.

or

Select Ask on exit. Each time the ignition key is turned to position 0, the message Press ENTER to reduce guard until engine is started. Press EXIT to cancel will be displayed. Select one of the alternatives:

• if the alarm sensors are to be deactivated, press ENTER and then lock the vehicle.

The next time the ignition key is turned to position II, the sensors will be reactivated and Full guard will displayed.
If you do not wish to deactivate the sensors, do not choose an alternative and lock the vehicle or press **EXIT** and lock the vehicle.

**CAUTION**
- The accessory sensors are automatically reconnected to the alarm system the next time the vehicle is unlocked and then locked again.
- This function will not turn off the vehicle’s standard alarm.

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Canada IC: 4405A-DA 5823(3)

Movement sensor DA5823 by Dynex Operation is subject to the following conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>General information</td>
<td>136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel requirements</td>
<td>140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ignition switch</td>
<td>143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Starting the vehicle</td>
<td>144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Starting the vehicle with keyless drive (option as available)</td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual transmission, 5-speed (certain markets only)</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual transmission, 6-speed (certain markets only)</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic transmission (option)</td>
<td>149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shiftlock override</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All Wheel Drive (option)</td>
<td>152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brake system</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stability system</td>
<td>155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Towing</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jump starting</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Towing a trailer</td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Detachable trailer hitch</td>
<td>162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transporting loads</td>
<td>163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blind Spot Information System (BLIS)–option</td>
<td>164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Park assist (Option/accessory)</td>
<td>168</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Economical driving conserves natural resources
Better driving economy may be obtained by thinking ahead, avoiding rapid starts and stops and adjusting the speed of your vehicle to immediate traffic conditions.

Observe the following rules:
- Bring the engine to normal operating temperature as soon as possible by driving with a light foot on the accelerator pedal for the first few minutes of operation. A cold engine uses more fuel and is subject to increased wear.
- Whenever possible, avoid using the vehicle for driving short distances. This does not allow the engine to reach normal operating temperature.
- Drive carefully and avoid rapid acceleration and hard braking.
- Use the transmission’s Drive (D) position as often as possible and avoid using kick-down.
- Do not exceed posted speed limits.
- Avoid carrying unnecessary items (extra load) in the vehicle.
- Maintain correct tire pressure. Check tire pressure regularly (when tires are cold).
- Remove snow tires when threat of snow or ice has ended.
- Note that roof racks, ski racks, etc, increase air resistance and also fuel consumption.
- At highway driving speeds, fuel consumption will be lower with the air conditioning on and the windows closed than with the air conditioning off and the windows open.
- Using the onboard trip computer’s fuel consumption modes can help you learn how to drive more economically.

Other factors that decrease gas mileage are:
- Dirty air cleaner
- Dirty engine oil and clogged oil filter
- Dragging brakes
- Incorrect front end alignment

Some of the above mentioned items and others are checked at the standard maintenance intervals.

WARNING
Driving with the tailgate open: Driving with the tailgate open could lead to poisonous exhaust gases entering the passenger compartment. If the tailgate must be kept open for any reason, proceed as follows:
1. Close the windows.
2. Set the ventilation system control to air flow to floor, windshield and side windows and the blower control to its highest setting.

Weight distribution affects handling
At the specified curb weight your vehicle has a tendency to understeer, which means that the steering wheel has to be turned more than might seem appropriate for the curvature of a bend. This ensures good stability and reduces the risk of rear wheel skid. Remember that these properties can alter with the vehicle load. The heavier the load in the cargo area, the less the tendency to understeer.
Handling, roadholding
Vehicle load, tire design and inflation pressure all affect vehicle handling. Therefore, check that the tires are inflated to the recommended pressure according to the vehicle load. See the "Tire pressure" section. Loads should be distributed so that capacity weight or maximum permissible axle loads are not exceeded.

Driving through water
The vehicle can be driven through water up to a depth of approximately 9 in. (25 cm), at a maximum speed of 6 mph (10 km/h).
- Take particular care when driving through flowing water.
- Clean the electrical connections for trailer wiring after driving in mud or water
- When driving through water, maintain low speed and do not stop in the water.

Cold weather precautions
If you wish to check your vehicle before the approach of cold weather, the following advice is worth noting:
- Make sure that the engine coolant contains 50 percent antifreeze. Any other mixture will reduce freeze protection. This gives protection against freezing down to −31 °F (−35 °C). See section "Coolant". The use of "recycled" antifreeze is not approved by Volvo. Different types of antifreeze must not be mixed.
- Volvo recommends using only genuine Volvo antifreeze in your vehicle’s radiator. Your Volvo retailer stocks plenty of Volvo engine coolant to help protect your vehicle during cold weather.
- Try to keep the fuel tank well filled – this prevents the formation of condensation in the tank. In addition, in extremely cold weather conditions it is worthwhile to add fuel line de-icer before refueling.
- The viscosity of the engine oil is important. Oil with low viscosity (thinner oil) improves cold-weather starting as well as decreasing fuel consumption while the engine is warming up. For winter use, 5W-30 oil, particularly the synthetic type, is recommended. Be sure to use good quality oil but do not use cold-weather oil for hard driving or in warm weather, see page 269 for more information.
- The load placed on the battery is greater during the winter since the windshield wipers, lighting, etc. are used more often. Moreover, the capacity of the battery decreases as the temperature drops. In very cold weather, a poorly charged battery can freeze and be damaged. It is therefore advisable to check the state of charge.
more frequently and spray an anti-rust oil on the battery posts.

- Volvo recommends the use of snow tires on all four wheels for winter driving – see the chapter "Wheels and tires."

- To prevent the washer fluid reservoir from freezing, add washer solvents containing antifreeze (see page 215 for the location of the washer fluid reservoir). This is important since dirt is often splashed on the windshield during winter driving, requiring the frequent use of the washers and wipers. Volvo Washer Solvent should be diluted as follows: Down to 14 °F (-10 °C): 1 part washer solvent and 4 parts water Down to 5 °F (-15 °C): 1 part washer solvent and 3 parts water Down to 0° F (-18° C): 1 part washer solvent and 2 parts water Down to -18° F (-28° C): 1 part washer solvent and 1 part water.

- Use Volvo Teflon Lock Spray in the locks.

- Avoid using de-icing sprays as they can cause damage to the locks.

### Conserving electrical current

Keep the following in mind to help minimize battery drain:

- When the engine is not running, avoid turning the ignition key to position II. Many electrical systems (the audio system, the optional navigation system, power windows, etc) will function with the ignition key in position I. This position reduces drain on the battery.

- Please keep in mind that using systems, accessories, etc that consume a great deal of current when the engine is not running could result in the battery being completely drained.

- The optional 12 volt socket in the cargo area (certain models only) provides electrical current even with the ignition switched off, which drains the battery.

### NOTE

- If the ignition is switched on, a warning message will be displayed in the text window in the instrument panel when the battery charge is low.

- An energy conserving function designed into the vehicle’s electrical system will switch off certain functions or reduce the load on the battery by, e.g., reducing the audio system’s volume.

### Before a long distance trip

It is always worthwhile to have your vehicle checked at a trained and qualified Volvo service technician before driving long distances. Your trained and qualified Volvo service technician will also be able to supply you with bulbs, fuses, spark plugs and wiper blades for your use in the event that problems occur.

As a minimum, the following items should be checked before any long trip:

- Check that engine runs smoothly and that fuel consumption is normal.
- Check for fuel, oil, and fluid leakage
- Have the transmission oil level checked\(^2\).
- Check condition of drive belts.

\(^2\) To prevent injury from contact with hot surfaces, do not inspect your vehicle's transmission fluid yourself. Have your vehicle's transmission fluid level inspected by a qualified Volvo service technician.
• Check state of the battery’s charge.
• Examine tires carefully (the spare tire as well), and replace those that are worn. Check tire pressures.
• The brakes, front wheel alignment, and steering gear should be checked by your Volvo retailer only.
• Check all lights, including high beams.
• Reflective warning triangles are legally required in some states/provinces.
• Have a word with your Volvo retailer if you intend to drive in countries where it may be difficult to obtain the correct fuel.
• Consider your destination. If you will be driving through an area where snow or ice are likely to occur, consider snow tires.
Octane rating

Minimum octane

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MINIMUM OCTANE RATING (R + M)/2 METHOD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Volvo recommends premium fuel for best performance, but using 87 octane or above will not affect engine reliability.

Volvo engines are designed to achieve rated horsepower, torque, and fuel economy performance using premium 91 octane fuel.

Demanding driving

In demanding driving conditions, such as operating the vehicle in hot weather, towing a trailer, or driving for extended periods at higher altitudes than normal, it may be advisable to switch to higher octane fuel (91 or higher) or to change gasoline brands to fully utilize your engine’s capacity, and for the smoothest possible operation.

NOTE

When switching to higher octane fuel or changing gasoline brands, it may be necessary to fill the tank more than once before a difference in engine operation is noticeable.

Fuel Formulations

Do not use gasoline that contains lead as a knock inhibitor, and do not use lead additives. Besides damaging the exhaust emission control systems on your vehicle, lead has been strongly linked to certain forms of cancer.

Many fuels contain benzene as a solvent. Unburned benzene has been strongly linked to certain forms of cancer. If you live in an area where you must fill your own gas tank, take precautions. These may include:

- standing upwind away from the filler nozzle while refueling
- refueling only at gas stations with vapor recovery systems that fully seal the mouth of the filler neck during refueling
- wearing neoprene gloves while handling a fuel filler nozzle.

Use of Additives

With the exception of gas line antifreeze during winter months, do not add solvents, thickeners, or other store-bought additives to your vehicle’s fuel, cooling, or lubricating systems. Overuse may damage your engine, and some of these additives contain organically volatile chemicals. Do not needlessly expose yourself to these chemicals.

WARNING

Never carry a cell phone that is switched on while refueling your vehicle. If the phone rings, this may cause a spark that could ignite gasoline fumes, resulting in fire and injury.

WARNING

Carbon monoxide is a poisonous, colorless, and odorless gas. It is present in all exhaust gases. If you ever smell exhaust fumes inside the vehicle, make sure the passenger compartment is ventilated, and immediately return the vehicle to a trained and qualified Volvo service technician for correction.
Deposit control gasoline (detergent additives)
Volvo recommends the use of detergent gasoline to control engine deposits. Detergent gasoline is effective in keeping injectors and intake valves clean. Consistent use of deposit control gasolines will help ensure good drivability and fuel economy. If you are not sure whether the gasoline contains deposit control additives, check with the service station operator.

NOTE
Volvo does not recommend the use of store-bought fuel injector cleaning additives.

Unleaded fuel
Each Volvo has a three-way catalytic converter and must use only unleaded gasoline. U.S. and Canadian regulations require that pumps delivering unleaded gasoline be labelled "UNLEADED". Only these pumps have nozzles which fit your vehicle’s filler inlet. It is unlawful to dispense leaded fuel into a vehicle labelled "unleaded gasoline only". Leaded gasoline damages the three-way catalytic converter and the heated oxygen sensor system. Repeated use of leaded gasoline will lessen the effectiveness of the emission control system and could result in loss of emission warranty coverage. State and local vehicle inspection programs will make detection of misfueling easier, possibly resulting in emission test failure for misfueled vehicles.

NOTE
Some U.S. and Canadian gasolines contain an octane enhancing additive called methyl-cyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT). If such fuels are used, your Emission Control System performance may be affected, and the Check Engine Light (malfunction indicator lamp) located on your instrument panel may light. If this occurs, please return your vehicle to a trained and qualified Volvo service technician for maintenance.

Gasoline containing alcohol and ethers
Some fuel suppliers sell gasoline containing "oxygenates" which are usually alcohols or ethers. In some areas, state or local laws require that the service pump be marked indicating use of alcohols or ethers. However, there are areas in which the pumps are unmarked. If you are not sure whether there is alcohol or ethers in the gasoline you buy, check with the service station operator. To meet seasonal air quality standards, some areas require the use of "oxygenated" fuel. Volvo allows the use of the following "oxygenated" fuels; however, the octane ratings listed on this page must still be met. Alcohol – Ethanol: Fuels containing up to 10% ethanol by volume may be used. Ethanol may also be referred to as Ethyl alcohol, or "Gasohol". Ethers – MTBE: Fuels containing up to 15% MTBE may be used.

Fuel filler door
Press the button on the light switch panel (see the illustration on page 61) with the ignition switched off to unlock the fuel filler door. Please note that the fuel filler door will remain unlocked until the vehicle begins to move forward. An audible click will be heard when the fuel filler door relocks.

If you intend to leave your vehicle while it is being refueled, this feature enables you to lock the doors/tailgate while leaving the fuel filler door unlocked.

You can also keep the vehicle locked if you remain inside it during refueling. The central locking button does not lock the fuel filler door.

Be sure the fuel filler door is not obstructed and is completely closed after refueling. Open the fuel filler cap slowly during hot weather.
06 Starting and driving

Fuel requirements

Refueling
The fuel tank is designed to accommodate possible expansion of the fuel in hot weather, see page 267 for fuel tank volume. Be aware that the “usable” tank capacity will be somewhat less than the specified maximum. When the fuel level is low, such factors as ambient temperature, the fuel’s “Reid vapor pressure” characteristics, and terrain can affect the fuel pump’s ability to supply the engine with an adequate supply of fuel. Therefore, it is advisable to refuel as soon as possible when the needle nears the red zone, or when the fuel warning light comes on.

CAUTION

- Do not refuel with the engine running\(^1\). Turn the ignition off or to position I. If the ignition is on, an incorrect reading could occur in the fuel gauge.
- After refueling, close the fuel filler cap by turning it clockwise until it clicks into place.
- Avoid overfilling the fuel tank. Do not press the handle on the filler nozzle more than one extra time. Too much fuel in the tank in hot weather conditions can cause the fuel to overflow. Overfilling could also cause damage to the emission control systems.
- Avoid spilling gasoline during refueling. In addition to causing damage to the environment, gasolines containing alcohol can cause damage to painted surfaces, which may not be covered under the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.
- Do not use gasolines containing methanol (methyl alcohol, wood alcohol). This practice can result in vehicle performance deterioration and can damage critical parts in the fuel system. Such damage may not be covered under the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

\(^1\) If the fuel filler cap is not closed tightly or if the engine is running when the vehicle is refueled, the Check Engine Light (malfunction indicator lamp) may indicate a fault. However, your vehicle’s performance will not be affected. Use only Volvo original or approved fuel filler caps.
Ignition switch positions

0 – Locked position
Remove the key to lock the steering wheel1. Never turn the key to position 0 while driving or when the vehicle is being towed.

II – Drive position
The key’s position when driving. The vehicle’s entire electrical system is activated.

III – Start position
Turn the key to this position and release it immediately. The key returns automatically to the Drive position. A chime will sound if the key is left in the ignition and the driver’s door is opened (does not apply to vehicles with the optional keyless drive).

I – Intermediate position2
Certain accessories, radio, etc. on, daytime running lights off.

NOTE
A ticking sound may be audible if the key is turned to a position between 0 and I. To stop this sound, turn the key to position II and back to position 0.

1 Automatic transmission: the gear selector must be in the Park position. The optional keyless drive start control does not need to be removed.
2 Please be aware that leaving the key in this positions I or II will increase battery drain.
Starting the vehicle

To start the engine

**WARNING**

Before starting, check that the seat, steering wheel and mirrors are adjusted properly. Make sure the brake pedal can be depressed completely. Adjust the seat if necessary.

1. Fasten the seat belt.
2. Apply the parking brake if not already set. The gear selector should be locked in the Park (P) position (Shiftlock). See also page 151.

   **Manual transmission**: The clutch must be fully depressed.

3. The vehicle is equipped with an autostart feature. Without touching the throttle pedal, turn the key to position III and release it. The starter motor will then operate automatically (for up to ten seconds) until the engine starts. If the engine fails to start, repeat this step.
4. To release the gear selector from the Park (P) position, the engine must be running (or the ignition key must be in position II) and the brake pedal must be depressed.
5. Select the desired gear. On models with an automatic transmission, the gear engages after a very slight delay which is especially noticeable when selecting R.

**NOTE**

- **Immobile**: If two of the keys to your vehicle are close together, e.g., on the same key ring when you try to start the vehicle, this could cause interference in the immobilizer system and result in the vehicle not starting. If this should occur, remove one of the keys from the key ring before trying to start the vehicle again.
- **Keylock**: Models equipped an automatic transmission have a keylock system. When the engine is switched off, the gear selector must be in the Park (P) position before the key can be removed from the ignition switch.¹
- When starting in cold weather, the transmission may shift up at slightly higher engine speeds than normal until the automatic transmission fluid reaches normal operating temperature.
- Do not race a cold engine immediately after starting. Oil flow may not reach some lubrication points fast enough to prevent engine damage.

¹ The optional keyless drive start control does not need to be removed from the ignition switch.
**WARNING**

Volvo’s floor mats are specially manufactured for your car. They must be firmly secured in the clips on the floor so that they cannot slide and become trapped under the pedals on the driver’s side.

- Always place the gear selector in Park (P) (manual transmission: first or reverse gear) and apply the parking brake before leaving the vehicle and apply the parking brake before leaving the vehicle. Never leave the vehicle unattended with the engine running.

- Always open garage doors fully before starting the engine inside a garage to ensure adequate ventilation. The exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide, which is invisible and odorless but very poisonous.

**CAUTION**

**Automatic transmission:** The engine should be idling when you move the gear selector. Never accelerate until after you feel the transmission engage! Accelerating immediately after selecting a gear will cause harsh engagement and premature transmission wear. Selecting P or N when idling at a standstill for prolonged periods of time will help prevent overheating of the automatic transmission fluid.
Starting a vehicle with keyless drive

Keyless drive makes it possible to unlock, start and lock the vehicle without using a remote control.

A start control is fitted in the ignition switch on vehicles equipped with the optional keyless drive. This control is used in the same way as the ignition key to start the engine. See also page 144 for general information on starting the engine.

NOTE

- Press the brake pedal (the clutch pedal must also be fully depressed on models with a manual transmission).
- Press in the keyless drive start control and turn it to position III.

NOTE

- The vehicle is equipped with an autostart function that makes it possible to start the engine without holding the start control in position III. Turn the start control to position III and release it. The starter motor will then operate automatically (for up to ten seconds) until the engine starts.

Starting the vehicle with the ignition key (remote control)

A vehicle with keyless drive can also be started with the ignition key (if, for example, the battery in the keyless drive remote control is weak). To do so:

1. Press the catch on the side of the start control (see the illustration).
2. Pull the keyless drive start control out of the ignition switch.
3. Insert the remote control into the ignition switch and turn it to position III to start the engine. See also page 144 for complete starting information.
Depress the clutch pedal completely when changing gears\(^1\).

Remove your foot from the clutch pedal while driving. The shift pattern should be followed. Overdrive (5th gear) should be used as often as possible to help improve fuel economy.

Reverse gear should only be engaged from a complete stop.

### NOTE

Reverse gear is electronically blocked to help prevent it from being selected while the vehicle is moving forward.

---

\(^1\) Clutch interlock: The clutch must be fully depressed before you can start your car. If the clutch is not depressed, it will not be possible to start the engine.
Depress the clutch pedal completely when changing gears\(^1\).
Remove your foot from the clutch pedal while driving. The shift pattern should be followed.
Overdrive (5th and 6th gears) should be used as often as possible to help improve fuel economy.

Reverse gear should only be engaged from a complete stop.

Reverse gear is electronically blocked to help prevent it from being selected while the vehicle is moving forward.

\(^1\) Clutch interlock: The clutch must be fully depressed before you can start your car. If the clutch is not depressed, it will not be possible to start the engine.
**Shiftgate positions**

Depress the button on the front of the gear selector knob to move the selector between the R, N, D, and P positions.

The gear selector can be moved freely between the Geartronic (manual shifting) and Drive (D) positions while driving.

**Gear selector positions**

**P – Park**
Select the P position when starting or parking. In P, the transmission is mechanically blocked (Shiftlock). Always apply the parking brake when parking.

**R – Reverse**
The car must be stationary when shifting to position R.

**N – Neutral**
N is the neutral position. The engine can be started, but no gear is selected. Apply the parking brake when the car is stationary with the gear selector in N.

**D – Drive**
D is the normal driving position. The Drive position offers 5 forward gears.1 The car automatically shifts between the various forward gears.

---

**CAUTION**
The car must be stationary when selecting position P.

---

1 T5 models have 6 forward gears.
06 Starting and driving

Automatic transmission (option)

based on the level of acceleration and speed. The car must be at a standstill when shifting to position D from position R.

Manual shifting – Geartronic

The manual shifting mode (Geartronic) can be selected at any time to manually select forward gears, including while the car is moving.

NOTE

Reverse, Neutral, and Park cannot be selected in Geartronic mode.

- To access the Manual (M) shifting position from Drive (D), move the gear selector to the right to M.
- To return to the Drive (D) position from M, move the gear selector to the left.

While driving

- If you select the M position while driving, the gear that was being used in the Drive position will also initially be selected in the M position.
- Move the gear selector forward (toward “+”) to shift to a higher gear or rearward (toward “-”) to shift to a lower gear.
- If you hold the gear selector toward “-”, the transmission will downshift one gear at a time and will utilize the braking power of the engine. If the current speed is too high for using a lower gear, the downshift will not occur until the speed has decreased enough to allow the lower gear to be used.
- If you slow to a very low speed, the transmission will automatically shift down.

Cold starts (turbo engines)

When driving before the engine has reached its normal operating temperature, the transmission will shift up at slightly higher engine speeds to heat the three-way catalytic converter as quickly as possible.

Kickdown

Automatic shift to a lower gear (kickdown) is achieved by depressing the accelerator pedal fully and briskly. An upshift will occur when approaching the top speed for a particular gear or by releasing the accelerator pedal slightly. Kickdown can be used for maximum acceleration or when passing at highway speeds.

Safety function

To help prevent excessive engine speeds (rpm) that could lead to engine damage, the engine management system includes a function that prevents kickdown from taking place if the engine speed is too high.
Overriding the shiftlock system

Shiftlock prevents the gear selector from being moved out of Park unless the ignition key is in position II and the brake pedal is depressed.

In certain cases it may be necessary to move the gear selector from the Park position manually.

**To manually override the Shiftlock system:**
1. Apply the parking brake.
2. Depress the brake pedal.
3. There is a small cover below P-R-N-D on the gear selector panel. Open the rear edge of the panel.
4. Insert the key blade, see page 120, into the opening and press it down until it bottoms.
5. With the key blade pressed down, move the gear selector out of the P position.
All Wheel Drive (AWD) – general information
Your Volvo can be equipped with permanent All Wheel Drive (option), which means that power is distributed automatically between the front and rear wheels. Under normal driving conditions, most of the engine’s power is directed to the front wheels. However, if there is any tendency for the front wheels to spin, an electronically controlled coupling distributes power to the wheels that have the best traction.

Tire dimensions
Volvo recommends that you always drive on tires of the same brand, size, construction (radial), tread pattern, load, speed, traction, temperature, and treadwear rating. Never drive on mixed tires, except for brief periods when the temporary spare tire is in use.
Always use properly inflated tires of correct dimensions. Tire size and inflation pressures are shown on a placard located on the driver’s side B-pillar (the structural member at the side of the vehicle, at the rear of the driver’s door opening). See also page 178 for the tire inflation pressure tables beginning.

Temporary Spare
The temporary spare tire is for temporary, low-speed, short-distance use only. Replace it with a full-sized tire as soon as possible. Do not drive on the temporary spare at speeds above 50 mph (80 km/h).
Never install snow chains on a temporary spare.
Brake circuit malfunction
The brake system is a hydraulic system consisting of two separate brake circuits. If a problem should occur in one of these circuits, it is still possible to stop the vehicle with the other brake circuit.

If the brake pedal must be depressed farther than normal and requires greater foot pressure, the stopping distance will be longer.

A warning light in the instrument panel will light up to warn the driver that a fault has occurred. If this light comes on while driving or braking, stop immediately and check the brake fluid level in the reservoir.

NOTE
Press the brake pedal hard and maintain pressure on the pedal – do not pump the brakes.

WARNING
If the fluid level is below the MIN mark in the reservoir or if a brake system message is shown in the information display, DO NOT DRIVE. Have the vehicle towed to a Volvo retailer and have the brake system inspected.

Power brakes function only when the engine is running
The power brakes utilize vacuum pressure which is only created when the engine is running. Never let the vehicle roll to a stop with the engine switched off.

If the power brakes are not working, the brake pedal must be pressed approximately five times harder than usual to make up for the lack of power assistance. This can happen for example when towing your vehicle or if the engine is switched off when the vehicle is rolling. The brake pedal feels harder than usual.

Water on brake discs and brake pads affects braking
Driving in rain and slush or passing through an automatic car wash can cause water to collect on the brake discs and pads. This will cause a delay in braking effect when the pedal is depressed. To avoid such a delay when the brakes are needed, depress the pedal occasionally when driving through rain, slush, etc. This will remove the water from the brakes. Check that brake application feels normal. This should also be done after washing or starting in very damp or cold weather.

Severe strain on the brake system
The brakes will be subject to severe strain when driving in mountains or hilly areas, or when towing a trailer. Vehicle speed is usually slower, which means that the cooling of the brakes is less efficient than when driving on level roads. To reduce the strain on the brakes, shift into a lower gear and let the engine help with the braking. Do not forget that if you are towing a trailer, the brakes will be subjected to a greater than normal load.

Anti-lock brakes (ABS)
The Anti-lock Braking System (ABS) helps to improve vehicle control (stopping and steering) during severe braking conditions by limiting brake lockup. When the system “senses” impending lockup, braking pressure is automatically modulated in order to help prevent lockup that could lead to a skid.

The system performs a self-diagnostic test when the engine is started and when the vehicle first reaches a speed of approximately 12 mph (20 km/h). The brake pedal will pulsate several times and a sound may be audible from the ABS control module. This is normal.
Brake system

For optimal ABS braking effect:
1. Press down on the brake pedal with full force. The pedal will pulsate.
2. Steer the vehicle in the direction of travel and keep the brake pedal depressed.

Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD)
EBD is an integrated part of the ABS system. EBD regulates the hydraulic pressure to the rear brakes to help provide optimal braking capacity.

The switching of the ABS modulator will be audible and the brake pedal will pulsate during braking. Please be aware that ABS does not increase the absolute braking potential of the vehicle. While control will be enhanced, ABS will not shorten stopping distances on slippery surfaces.

If the warning lamp lights up there is a malfunction of the ABS system (the standard braking system will still function) and the vehicle should be driven cautiously to a trained and qualified Volvo service technician for inspection.

WARNING
If the BRAKES and ABS warning symbols light at the same time, there may be a problem in the brake system. If the brake fluid level is normal in these circumstances, drive carefully to a trained and qualified Volvo service technician to have the brake system checked.

Emergency Brake Assistance – EBA
EBA is designed to provide full brake effect immediately in the event of sudden, hard braking. The system is activated by the speed with which the brake pedal is depressed.

When the EBA system is activated, the brake pedal will go down and pressure in the brake system immediately increases to the maximum level. Maintain full pressure on the brake pedal in order to utilize the system completely. EBA is automatically deactivated when the brake pedal is released.

NOTE
- When the EBA system is activated, the brake pedal will go down and pressure in the brake system immediately increases to the maximum level. You must maintain full pressure on the brake pedal in order to utilize the system completely. There will be no braking effect if the pedal is released. EBA is automatically deactivated when the brake pedal is released.
- When the vehicle has been parked for some time, the brake pedal may sink more than usual when the engine is started. This is normal and the pedal will return to its usual position when it is released.
Stability system

**Stability Traction Control (STC)/Dynamic Stability Traction Control (DSTC)**

The stability system consists of a number of functions designed to help reduce wheel spin, counteract skidding, and to generally help improve directional stability.

A pulsating sound will be audible when the system is actively operating and is normal.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function/system</th>
<th>STC</th>
<th>DSTC¹</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TC</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SC</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AYC</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ Option on certain models.

**Traction control – TC**

This function is designed to help reduce wheel spin by transferring power from a drive wheel that begins to lose traction to the wheel on the opposite side of the vehicle (on the same axle).

TC is most active at low speeds.

This is one of the stability system’s permanent functions and cannot be switched off.

**Spin control (SC)**

The spin control function is designed to help prevent the drive wheels from spinning while the vehicle is accelerating.

Under certain circumstances, such as when driving with snow chains, or driving in deep snow or loose sand, it may be advisable to temporarily switch off this function for maximum tractive force.

**Temporarily switching off Spin control**

1. Turn the thumbwheel (A) on the left-side steering wheel lever until the STC/DSTC menu is displayed.
2. Hold down the **RESET** button (B) to toggle between **STC/DSTC SPIN CONTROL ON** or **OFF**.

**NOTE**

- The message **STC/DSTC SPIN CONTROL OFF** indicates that the stability system’s spin control function has temporarily been switched off.
- The stability control indicator light will illuminate and remain on until spin control has been reactivated.
- The spin control function is automatically enabled each time the engine is started.
- **STC/DSTC ON** indicates that all system functions are active.

**Active yaw control – AYC (DSTC only)**

This function helps maintain directional stability, for example when cornering, by braking one or more of the wheels if the vehicle shows a tendency to skid or slide laterally.

---

¹ Models equipped with All Wheel Drive (AWD) have an integrated traction control function that cannot be disabled. DSTC is optional on AWD models.
06 Starting and driving

Stability system

This is one of the stability system's permanent functions and cannot be switched off.

**WARNING**

The car’s handling and stability characteristics will be altered if the STC/DSTC system functions have been disabled.

STC/DSTC-related messages in the text window

- **"TRACTION CONTROL TEMPORARILY OFF"** – The system has been temporarily switched off due to high brake temperature and will automatically switch on again when the brakes have cooled.
- **"ANTI SKID SERVICE REQUIRED"** – the system has been automatically disengaged due to a fault. A trained and qualified Volvo service technician should check the system.

Symbols used by the stability system

Stability system indicator light

**Information symbol**

If the and symbols light up at the same time, read the message in the display.

If only the symbol lights up, this indicates one of the following situations:

- The light illuminates for approximately 2 seconds to indicate that the system is performing a self-diagnostic test when the engine is started.
- If the light flashes while driving, this indicates that the stability system is actively functioning to help counteract wheel spin and/or a skid.
- If this light stays on after the engine has started or comes on while driving, there may be a fault in the stability system. Consult a trained and qualified Volvo service technician.
- If Spin control has been intentionally switched off, a message is displayed and the light will stay on as a reminder that this function has been disabled by the driver.

**WARNING**

The stability system is intended to help improve driving safety. It supplements, but can never replace, the driver’s judgement and responsibility when operating the vehicle. Speed and driving style should always be adapted to traffic and road conditions.
Emergency towing

The towing eyelet is located under the floor of the cargo area. This eyelet must be screwed into the positions provided on the right sides of either the front or rear bumper (see the illustration).

To attach the towing eyelet:
1. Press the mark on the lower edge of the cover (1) to open it.
2. Screw the towing eyelet in place first by hand and then using the tire iron until it is securely in place.

After the vehicle has been towed, the eyelet should be removed and returned to its storage space. Press the cover back into position.

⚠️ WARNING
Do not use the towing eyelets to pull the vehicle up onto a flat bed tow truck.

Towing a vehicle with all four wheels on the ground

⚠️ WARNING
Volvo does not recommend towing a disabled vehicle behind another vehicle. Significant difficulty in steering and braking, combined with unfavorable weather, traffic, and road conditions may make it impossible to maintain vehicle control.

1. Apply the parking brake.
2. Insert the key into the ignition to unlock the steering wheel. The steering wheel must be unlocked. With the engine off and the vehicle at a standstill, great effort will be required to turn the steering wheel.
3. Turn the ignition key to position II.
4. Place the gear selector in neutral. For vehicles with automatic transmissions, follow instruction on page 151, “Shiftlock override” to allow the gear selector to be moved from the Park position.
5. Keep firm pressure on the brake pedal while releasing the parking brake.
6. When towing has been completed, return the gear selector to Park (automatic) or Reverse (manual) and apply the parking brake.

The following points should also be observed:
- Never exceed 50 mph (80 km/h). Never exceed local towing speed limits and heed all local towing restrictions.
- Never tow farther than 50 miles (80 km).
- Keep the tow rope taut at all times while the vehicle is in motion.
- The disabled vehicle should be towed in the forward direction only.
WARNING

- Never allow a vehicle to be towed without a driver behind the wheel of the disabled vehicle.
- Never remove the key from the ignition while the vehicle is moving. The steering wheel could lock, making it impossible to steer the vehicle.
- When the engine is not running, steering resistance and the effort needed to apply the brakes will be great.
- Never attempt to tow a vehicle with a dead battery at night.

CAUTION

- Check with state and local authorities before attempting this type of towing, as vehicles being towed are subject to regulations regarding maximum towing speed, length and type of towing device, lighting, marker flags, etc.
- Never attempt to push- or tow-start a vehicle with a dead battery. This would inject unburned fuel into the three-way catalytic converter(s), causing overheating, backfiring, and damage, see page 159 for instructions on jump starting the vehicle.

Towing vehicles with front wheel drive

Volvo recommends the use of flat bed equipment for towing vehicles with front wheel drive. If wheel lift equipment must be used, please use extreme caution to help avoid damage to the vehicle.

In this case, the vehicle should be towed with the rear wheels on the ground if at all possible.

If it is absolutely necessary to tow the vehicle with the front wheels on the ground, please refer to the towing information on the previous page.

- Sling-type equipment applied at the front will damage radiator and air conditioning lines.
- It is equally important not to use sling-type equipment at the rear or apply lifting equipment inside the rear wheels; serious damage to the rear axle may result.
- If the vehicle is being towed on a flat bed truck, the towing eyelets must not be used to secure the vehicle on the flat bed. Consult the tow truck operator.

WARNING

- Remember that the power brakes and power steering will not function when engine is not running. The braking and steering systems will function but the brake pedal pressure required is 3 – 5 times above normal and greater steering effort must be exerted.
- The towing eyelets must not be used for pulling the vehicle out of a ditch or for any similar purpose involving severe strain. Do not use the towing eyelets to pull the vehicle up onto a flat bed tow truck.
Follow these instructions to jump start your vehicle’s dead battery or to jump start another vehicle’s dead battery using your vehicle. If the 12-volt auxiliary battery to be used is in another vehicle, check that the vehicles are not touching to prevent premature completion of a circuit. Be sure to follow jump starting instructions provided for the other vehicle.

To jump start your vehicle:

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. First connect the auxiliary battery positive (+) terminal (1) to the positive (+) terminal in your vehicle’s battery (2), marked with a “+” sign.
3. Connect the auxiliary battery’s negative (−) terminal (3) to the ground point in your vehicle’s engine compartment near the driver’s side spring strut (4).
4. Start the engine in the assisting vehicle, then start the engine in the vehicle with dead battery.
5. After the engine has started, first remove the negative (−) terminal jumper cable. Then remove the positive (+) terminal jumper cable.

**WARNING**

**PROPOSITION 65 WARNING!**
Battery posts, terminals, and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the state of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. Wash hands after handling.

**WARNING**

Do not connect the jumper cable to any part of the fuel system or to any moving parts. Avoid touching hot manifolds.

- Batteries generate hydrogen gas, which is flammable and explosive.
- Battery fluid contains sulfuric acid. Do not allow battery fluid to contact eyes, skin, fabrics or painted surfaces. If contact occurs, flush the affected area immediately with water. Obtain medical help immediately if eyes are affected.
- Never expose the battery to open flame or electric spark.
- Do not smoke near the battery.
- Failure to follow the instructions for jump starting can lead to personal injury.
- Do not touch the jumper cables during the attempt to start the vehicle. This could cause sparks.
Towing a trailer

General information

- Volvo recommends the use of Volvo trailer hitches that are specially designed for the vehicle.

⚠️ CAUTION

Models equipped with the B5244S7 engine (engine code 39, which is the 6th and 7th digits from the left in your vehicle’s VIN number, see page 262 for the location of the VIN plate), may not be used to tow trailers or vehicles of any kind. This could cause damage to the vehicle’s emission control systems.

Maximum trailer weights recommended by Volvo are:

- **Trailers without brakes**: 1,540 lbs (700 kg).
- **Trailers with brakes**: 2,000 lbs (900 kg)

Observe the legal requirements of the state/province in which the vehicles are registered.

- **The maximum recommended hitch tongue load** is 165 lbs (75 kg).
- All Volvo models are equipped with energy-absorbing shock-mounted bumpers. Trailer hitch installation should not interfere with the proper operation of this bumper system.

Trailer towing does not normally present any particular problems, but take into consideration:

- Increase tire pressure to recommended full. See the chapter "Wheels and tires."
- When your vehicle is new, avoid towing heavy trailers during the first 620 miles (1,000 km).
- Maximum speed when towing a trailer: 50 mph (80 km/h).
- Engine and transmission are subject to increased loads. Therefore, engine coolant temperature should be closely watched when driving in hot climates or hilly terrain. Use a lower gear and turn off the air conditioner if the temperature gauge needle enters the red range.
- If the automatic transmission begins to overheat, a message will be displayed in the information display.
- Avoid overload and other abusive operation.
- Hauling a trailer affects handling, durability, and economy.
- It is necessary to balance trailer brakes with the towing vehicle brakes to provide a safe stop (check and observe state/local regulations).
- Do not connect the trailer’s brake system directly to the vehicle’s brake system.

- More frequent vehicle maintenance is required.
- Remove the ball and drawbar assembly when the hitch is not being used.
- Volvo recommends the use of synthetic engine oil when towing a trailer over long distances or in mountainous areas.

⚠️ WARNING

- Bumper-attached trailer hitches must not be used on Volvos, nor should safety chains be attached to the bumper.
- Trailer hitches attaching to the vehicle’s rear axle must not be used.
- Never connect a trailer’s hydraulic brake system directly to the vehicle brake system, nor a trailer’s lighting system directly to the vehicle lighting system. Consult your nearest trained and qualified Volvo service technician for correct installation.
- When towing a trailer, the trailer’s safety wire must be correctly fastened to the hole or hook provided in the trailer hitch on the vehicle. The safety wire should never be fastened to or wound around the drawbar ball.
NOTE

• When parking the vehicle with a trailer on a hill, apply the parking brake before putting the gear selector in Park (P) or in reverse on models with a manual transmission. Always follow the trailer manufacturer’s recommendations for wheel chocking.

• If you use the manual (Geartronic) shift positions while towing a trailer, or if the vehicle is equipped with a manual transmission, make sure the gear you select does not put too much strain on the engine (using too high a gear).

• The drawbar assembly/trailer hitch may be rated for trailers heavier than the vehicle is designed to tow. Please adhere to Volvo’s recommended trailer weights.

• Avoid driving with a trailer on inclines exceeding 15%.
## Detachable trailer hitch

### Installing the ball holder

1. If necessary, remove the cotter pin from the locking bolt and slide the locking bolt out of the hitch assembly.
2. Slide the ball holder into the hitch assembly.
3. Align the hole in the ball holder with the one in the hitch assembly.
4. Slide the locking bolt through the hitch assembly/ball holder.
5. Insert the cotter pin in the hole at the end of the locking bolt.

### Removing the ball holder

1. Remove the cotter pin from the locking bolt and slide the locking bolt out of the ball holder/hitch assembly.
2. Pull the ball holder out of the hitch assembly.

### NOTE

A cover for the hitch assembly is also included in the kit.
Loading the vehicle
Your vehicle’s load-carrying capacity is affected by factors such as:

- the number of passengers
- tire inflation
- the amount of optional or accessory equipment installed
- the amount of cargo.

See the chapter “Wheels and tires” for more detailed information.

Before loading the car, turn off the engine, and apply the parking brake when loading or unloading long objects. The gear selector can be inadvertently knocked out of position by long cargo, causing the car to move.

Keep the following in mind when loading the vehicle:

- Load objects in the cargo area against the rear seat backrest.
- Load heavy cargo as low as possible.
- Center wide loads.
- Secure all cargo with restraining straps anchored to the load securing eyelets.
- Cover sharp edges on the load.
- Seats can be folded down and head restraints removed to extend the cargo compartment, see page 111.

WARNING
- Remember that an object weighing 44 lbs (20 kg) produces a force of 2,200 lbs (1,000 kg) in a head-on collision at 30 mph (50 km/h)!
- When the rear backrest(s) are folded down, the vehicle should not be loaded to a level higher than 2 in. (5 cm) below the upper edge of the rear side windows. Objects placed higher than this level could impede the function of the Volvo Inflatable Curtain.

Load carriers (accessory)
Load carriers are available as Volvo accessories. Follow the installation instructions supplied with the load carriers.

Observe the following points when using load carriers:

- To avoid damaging your car and to achieve maximum safety when driving, we recommend using the load carriers that Volvo has developed especially for your car.
- Volvo-approved removable roof racks are designed to carry the maximum allowable roof load for this vehicle: 165 lbs (75 kg). For Non-Volvo roof racks, check the manufacturer’s weight limits for the rack.
- Never exceed the rack manufacturer’s weight limits and never exceed the maximum rated roof load of 165 lbs (75 kg).
- Avoid single-point loads. Distribute loads evenly.
- Place heavier cargo at the bottom of the load.
- Secure the cargo correctly with appropriate tie-down equipment.
- Check periodically that the load carriers and load are properly secured.
- Remember that the car’s center of gravity and handling change when you carry a load on the roof.
- The car’s wind resistance and fuel consumption will increase with the size of the load.
- Drive smoothly. Avoid rapid starts, fast cornering and hard braking.
The Blind Spot Information System (BLIS) is an information system that indicates the presence of another vehicle moving in the same direction as your vehicle in the side-view mirror’s “blind area”.

**WARNING**
- BLIS is an information system, NOT a warning or safety system.
- BLIS does not eliminate the need for you to visually confirm the conditions around you, and the need for you to turn your head and shoulders to make sure that you can safely change lanes.
- As the driver, you have full responsibility for changing lanes in a safe manner.

The system is based on digital camera technology. The cameras (1) are located beneath the side-view mirrors.

When one (or both) of the cameras have detected a vehicle in the blind area (up to approximately 10 ft. (3 meters) from the side of your vehicle, and up to approximately 31 ft. (9.5 meters) behind the side-view mirror), the indicator light in the door panel (2) illuminates. The light will glow continuously to alert the driver of the vehicle in the blind area.

**NOTE**
The door panel indicator light illuminates on the side of the vehicle where the system has detected another vehicle. If your vehicle is passed on both sides at the same time, both lights will illuminate.

**CAUTION**
The BLIS system should only be repaired by a trained and qualified Volvo service technician.
When does BLIS function
The system functions when your vehicle is moving at speeds above 6 mph (10 km/h).

When you pass another vehicle:
The system reacts when you pass another vehicle at a speed of up to 6 mph (10 km/h) faster than that vehicle.

When you are passed by another vehicle:
The system reacts if your vehicle is passed by another vehicle at a speed of up to 43 mph (70 km/h) faster than your vehicle.

When daylight and darkness

Daylight
BLIS reacts to the **shape** of surrounding vehicles. The system is designed to help detect motor vehicles such as cars, trucks, buses, motorcycles, etc.

Darkness
BLIS reacts to the **headlights** of surrounding vehicles. In order to be detected by BLIS, a vehicle in the blind area must have its headlights on. This means, for example, that the system will not detect a trailer without headlights that is being towed behind a car or truck.

**WARNING**
- BLIS does not react to cyclists or mopeds.
- BLIS does not react to vehicles that are standing still.
- The function of the BLIS cameras may be affected by intense light, or when driving at night in areas where there are no external sources of light (e.g., street lights, other vehicles, etc.). In such cases, the system may react as if the cameras were obscured.
- In both of the above mentioned conditions, a message will appear in the information display.
- When driving in such conditions, the system’s function will be limited or it may be temporarily switched off, see page 166 for instructions.
- When the message is no longer displayed, BLIS will return to normal function.
- The BLIS cameras have the same limitation as the human eye. In other words, their “vision is impaired” by adverse weather conditions such as heavy snowfall, dense fog, etc.

**WARNING**
- BLIS does not function in sharp curves.
- BLIS does not function when your vehicle is backing up.
- If you are towing a wide trailer, this may prevent the BLIS cameras from detecting other vehicles in adjacent lanes.
Limitations
In certain situations, the BLIS indicator light(s) may illuminate even when there are no other vehicles in the area monitored by the system.

**NOTE**
If the BLIS indicator lights illuminate occasionally even when there are no other vehicles in the blind area, this does not indicate a fault in the system.

In the event of a fault, *Blind spot syst. service required* will be displayed.

The following are several examples of situations in which the BLIS indicator light(s) may illuminate even when there are no other vehicles in the area monitored by the system.

- **Light reflected from a wet road surface**
- **The vehicle’s own shadow against a large, light, smooth surface such as barriers between lanes on a highway**
- **Sunlight directly in the camera when the sun is low on the horizon**

**Cleaning the BLIS camera lenses**
In order to function optimally, the BLIS camera lenses must be kept clean. They can be wiped clean with a soft cloth or wet sponge.

**CAUTION**
- Clean the lenses carefully to avoid scratching.
- The lenses are electrically heated to help melt ice or snow. If necessary, gently brush away snow from the lenses.

**Switching BLIS on and off**
BLIS is automatically activated when the ignition is switched on. The indicator lights will provide confirmation by flashing 3 times.

- The system can be switched off by pressing the **BLIS** button in the center console. The indicator light in the button goes out.
when the system is switched off, and a text message is displayed.

- BLIS can be switched on again by pressing the button. The indicator light in the button will illuminate and a new text message will be displayed. Press the **READ** button, see page 58, to erase the message.

### BLIS system messages

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Text in the display</th>
<th>System status</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BLIS service required</td>
<td>BLIS not functioning properly. Contact an authorized Volvo service technician.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLIS camera blocked</td>
<td>BLIS camera obscured. Clean the lenses.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLIS ON</td>
<td>BLIS system on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLIS OFF</td>
<td>BLIS system off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLIS reduced function</td>
<td>The BLIS cameras’ function has been reduced by e.g., fog, or strong sunlight directly into the camera. The camera will reset itself when these conditions have changed. have been function reduced</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Introduction

The park assist system is designed to assist you when driving into parking spaces, garages, etc. It utilizes four ultrasound sensors located in one or both bumpers to measure the distance to a vehicle, object or a person who may be close to the front or rear of your vehicle.

Park assist is available in two versions:
- Rear bumper only
- Front and rear bumpers

**WARNING**

Park Assist is an information system, NOT a safety system. This system is designed to be a supplementary aid when parking the vehicle. It is not, however, intended to replace the driver’s attention and judgment.

**Function**

The system is activated automatically when the vehicle is started. The indicator light in the button in the center console illuminates.

- The front park assist system is active from the time the engine is started until the vehicle exceeds a speed of approximately 10 mph (15 km/h). It is also active when the vehicle is backing up.
- Rear park assist is active when the engine is running and reverse gear has been selected.

**Rear park assist**

The distance monitored behind the vehicle is approximately 5 ft (1.5 m). The signal comes from the rear speakers.

It may not be possible to combine auxiliary headlights and front park assist since these lights could trigger the system’s sensors.

**NOTE**

Rear park assist is deactivated automatically when towing a trailer if Volvo genuine trailer wiring is used.

**Front park assist**

The distance monitored in front of the vehicle is approximately 2.5 ft (0.8 m). The audible signal comes from the audio system’s front speakers.

It may not be possible to combine auxiliary headlights and front park assist since these lights could trigger the system’s sensors.
Activating/deactivating park assist

The system is activated automatically when the vehicle is started.

- Press the Park assist button on the center console to temporarily deactivate the system(s). The indicator light in the button will go out when the system has been deactivated.
- Park assist will be automatically reactivated the next time the engine is started, or if the button is pressed (the indicator light in the button will illuminate).

**NOTE**
- Front park assist is disengaged automatically when the parking brake is applied.
- If the vehicle is equipped with front and rear park assist, both systems will be deactivated by pressing the button.

**Audible signals from the park assist system**

The Park Assist system uses an intermittent tone that pulses faster as you come close to an object, and becomes constant when you are within approximately 1 ft (30 cm) of an object in front of or behind the vehicle. If the volume of another source from the audio system is high, this will be automatically lowered.

If there are objects within this distance both behind and in front of the vehicle, the signal alternates between front and rear speakers.

**Faults in the system**

If the information symbol illuminates and PARK ASSIST SERVICE REQUIRED is shown on the information display, this indicates that the system is not functioning properly and has been disengaged. Consult a Volvo retailer or authorized Volvo service technician.

**CAUTION**

In certain circumstances, the park assist system may give unexpected warning signals that can be caused by external sound sources that use the same ultrasound frequencies as the system. This may include such things as the horns of other vehicles, wet tires on asphalt, pneumatic brakes, motorcycle exhaust pipes, etc. This does not indicate a fault in the system.
Cleaning the sensors

The sensors must be cleaned regularly to ensure that they work properly. Clean them with water and a suitable car washing detergent.

Ice and snow covering the sensors may cause incorrect warning signals.

NOTE

If the sensors are obstructed by e.g., dirt, snow, or ice, this could result in false warning signals from the park assist system.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>General information</td>
<td>174</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tire inflation</td>
<td>176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inflation pressure—U.S. models</td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inflation pressure—Canadian models</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tire designations</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glossary of tire terminology</td>
<td>182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle loading</td>
<td>183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uniform tire quality gradings</td>
<td>185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Snow chains, snow tires, studded tires</td>
<td>186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temporary spare</td>
<td>187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wheel nuts</td>
<td>188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tire rotation</td>
<td>189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changing a wheel</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tire Sealing System</td>
<td>192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Your vehicle is equipped with tires according to the vehicle’s tire information placard on the B-pillar (the structural member at the side of the vehicle, at the rear of the driver’s door opening), or on the inside of the fuel filler door on Canadian models.

**CAUTION**

Some Volvo models are equipped with an Ultra High Performance tire and wheel combination designed to provide maximum dry pavement performance with consideration for hydroplaning resistance. As such, they may be more susceptible to road hazard damage and, depending on driving conditions, may achieve a tread life of less than 20,000 miles (30,000 km). Even if this vehicle is equipped with Volvo’s advanced AWD or DSTC system, these tires are not designed for winter driving, and should be replaced with winter tires when weather conditions dictate.

The tires have good road holding characteristics and offer good handling on dry and wet surfaces. It should be noted however that the tires have been developed to give these features on snow/ice-free surfaces.

Certain models are equipped with “all-season” tires, which provide a somewhat higher degree of road holding on slippery surfaces than tires without the “all-season” rating. However, for optimum road holding on icy or snow-covered roads, we recommend suitable winter tires on all four wheels.

When replacing tires, be sure that the new tires are the same size designation, type (radial) and preferably from the same manufacturer, on all four wheels. Otherwise there is a risk of altering the car’s roadholding and handling characteristics.

**Storing wheels and tires**

When storing complete wheels (tires mounted on rims), they should be suspended off the floor or placed on their sides on the floor.

Tires not mounted on rims should be stored on their sides or standing upright, but should not be suspended.

**CAUTION**

Tires should preferably be stored in a cool, dry, dark place, and should never be stored in close proximity to solvents, gasoline, oils, etc.

**WARNING**

- The wheel and tire sizes for your Volvo are specified to meet stringent stability and handling requirements. Unapproved wheel/tire size combinations can negatively affect your vehicle’s stability and handling. Approved tire sizes are shown in the Tire inflation pressure tables, see page 178.
- Any damage caused by installation of unapproved wheel/tire size combinations will not be covered by your new vehicle warranty. Volvo assumes no responsibility for death, injury, or expenses that may result from such installations.
Tread wear indicator

The tires have wear indicator strips running across or parallel to the tread. The letters TWI are printed on the side of the tire. When approximately 1/16” (1.6 mm) is left on the tread, these strips become visible and indicate that the tire should be replaced. Tires with less than 1/16” (1.6 mm) tread offer very poor traction.

When replacing worn tires, it is recommended that the tire be identical in type (radial) and size as the one being replaced. Using a tire of the same make (manufacturer) will prevent alteration of the driving characteristics of the vehicle.

New Tires

Remember that tires are perishable goods. As of 2000, the manufacturing week and year (Department of Transportation (DOT) stamp) will be indicated with 4 digits (e.g. 1502 means that the tire illustrated was manufactured during week 15 of 2002).

Tire age

Tires degrade over time, even when they are not being used. It is recommended that tires generally be replaced after 6 years of normal service. Heat caused by hot climates, frequent high loading conditions or Ultra Violet (U.V) exposure can accelerate the aging process.

You should replace the spare tire when you replace the other road tires due to the aging of the spare.

A tire’s age can be determined by the DOT stamp on the sidewall (see the illustration).

A tire with e.g., visible cracks or discoloration should be replaced immediately.

Improving tire economy

- Maintain correct tire pressure. For the tire pressure tables, see page 178.
- Drive smoothly; avoid fast starts, hard braking and tire screeching.
- Tire wear increases with speed.
- Correct front wheel alignment is very important.
- Unbalanced wheels impair tire economy and driving comfort.
- Tires must maintain the same direction of rotation throughout their lifetime.
- When replacing tires, the tires with the most tread should be mounted on the rear wheels to reduce the chance of oversteer during hard braking.
- Hitting curbs or potholes can damage the tires and/or wheels permanently.
07 Wheels and tires

Tire inflation

Inflation labels

Check tire inflation pressure regularly.

Tables listing the recommended inflation pressure for your vehicle can be found on page 178. A tire inflation pressure placard is also located on the driver's side B-pillar (the structural member at the side of the vehicle, at the rear of the driver's door opening). This placard indicates the designation of the factory-mounted tires on your vehicle, as well as load limits and inflation pressure.

Under-inflation or over-inflation may cause uneven treadwear patterns.

**WARNING**
- Under-inflation is the most common cause of tire failure and may result in severe tire cracking, tread separation, or "blowout," with unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury.
- Under-inflated tires reduce the load carrying capacity of your vehicle.

When weather temperature changes occur, tire inflation pressures also change. A 10-degree temperature drop causes a corresponding drop of 1 psi (7 kPa) in inflation pressure. Check your tire pressures frequently and adjust them to the proper pressure, which can be found on the vehicle’s tire information placard or certification label.

Use a tire gauge to check the tire inflation pressure, including the spare, at least once a month and before long trips. You are strongly urged to buy a reliable tire pressure gauge, as automatic service station gauges may be inaccurate.

Use the recommended cold inflation pressure for optimum tire performance and wear.
Checking tire pressure

Cold tires
Inflation pressure should be checked when the tires are cold.

The tires are considered to be cold when they have the same temperature as the surrounding (ambient) air.

This temperature is normally reached after the car has been parked for at least 3 hours.

After driving a distance of approximately 1 mile (1.6 km), the tires are considered to be hot. If you have to drive farther than this distance to pump your tire(s), check and record the tire pressure first and add the appropriate air pressure when you get to the pump.

If checking tire pressure when the tire is hot, never “bleed” or reduce air pressure. The tires are hot from driving and it is normal for pressures to increase above recommended cold pressures. A hot tire at or below recommended cold inflation pressure could be significantly under-inflated.

To check inflation pressure:
1. Remove the cap from the valve on one tire, then firmly press the tire gauge onto the valve.
2. Add air to reach the recommended air pressure
3. Replace the valve cap.
4. Repeat this procedure for each tire, including the spare.
5. Visually inspect the tires to make sure there are no nails or other objects embedded that could puncture the tire and cause an air leak.
6. Check the sidewalls to make sure there are no gouges, cuts, bulges or other irregularities.

NOTE
- If you overfill the tire, release air by pushing on the metal stem in the center of the valve. Then recheck the pressure with your tire gauge.
- Some spare tires require higher inflation pressure than the other tires. Consult the tire inflation tables, see page 178, or see the inflation pressure placard.

Speed ratings
The speed ratings in the tables translate as follows:
M = 81 mph (130 km/h), V = 149 mph (240 km/h), W = 168 mph (270 km/h)

See also page 180 for an explanation of the designations on the sidewall of the tire.

Load ratings
The load ratings in the tables translate as follows:
91 = 1365 lbs (615 kg), 93 = 1433 lbs (650 kg), 99 = 1709 lbs (755 kg)
**Inflation pressure—U.S. models**

**Tire inflation pressure table**
The following tire pressures are recommended by Volvo for your vehicle. Refer to the tire inflation placard for information specific to the tires installed on your vehicle at the factory.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tire size</th>
<th>Cold tire pressure up to five persons psi (kPa)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Front</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205/55R16 91V M+S</td>
<td>32 (220)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205/50R17 93V Extra Load M+S</td>
<td>35 (240)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>215/45R18 Extra load</td>
<td>35 (240)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temporary spare tire</td>
<td>61 (420)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T125/85R16 99M</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

^ Tires of this type may not be mounted on vehicles equipped with the optional self-leveling system.
### Tire inflation pressure table

The following tire pressures are recommended by Volvo for your vehicle. Refer to the tire inflation placard for information specific to the tires installed on your vehicle at the factory.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tire size</th>
<th>Cold tire pressures Up to five persons psi (kPa)</th>
<th>Optional pressure Up to three persons&lt;sup&gt;A&lt;/sup&gt; psi (kPa)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Front</td>
<td>Rear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205/55R16 91V M+S</td>
<td>36 (250)</td>
<td>36 (250)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205/50R17 93V Extra Load M+S</td>
<td>36 (250)</td>
<td>36 (250)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>215/45R18 93W Extra load&lt;sup&gt;B&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>36 (250)</td>
<td>36 (250)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temporary spare tire T125/85R16 99M</td>
<td>61 (420)</td>
<td>61 (420)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>A</sup> Optional pressure may not be used for homologation of fuel consumption or emissions.

<sup>B</sup> Tires of this type may not be mounted on vehicles equipped with the optional self-leveling system.
Federal law mandates that tire manufacturers place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires (see the illustration).

The following information is listed on the tire sidewall:

1. **Tire designation** (the following figures are examples of a tire designation):
   - **215**: The width of the tire (in millimeters) from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. The larger the number, the wider the tire.
   - **65**: The ratio of the tire’s height to its width.
   - **R**: Radial tire.
   - **15**: The diameter of the wheel rim (in inches).
   - **95**: The tire’s load index. In this example, a load index of 95 equals a maximum load of 1521 lbs (690 kg).
   - **H**: The tire’s speed rating, or the maximum speed at which the tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time, carrying a permissible load for the vehicle, and with correct inflation pressure. For example, H indicates a speed rating of 130 mph (210 km/h).

2. **NOTE**
   - This information may not appear on the tire because it is not required by law.

3. **M+S or M/S = Mud and Snow, AT = All Terrain, AS = All Season**

4. **U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN)**: This begins with the letters "DOT" and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000 the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are marketing codes used at the manufacturer’s discretion. This information helps a tire manufacturer identify a tire for safety recall purposes.

5. **Tire Ply Composition and Material Used**: Indicates the number of plies and the number of layers of rubber-coated fabric in the tire tread and sidewall. Tire manufacturers also must indicate the ply materials in the tire and the sidewall, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others.
**Maximum Load**: Indicates the maximum load in pounds and kilograms that can be carried by the tire. Refer to the vehicle’s tire information placard or the safety certification label, located on the B-Pillar or the driver’s door or on the inside of the fuel filler door on Canadian models, for the correct tire pressure for your vehicle.

**Treadwear, Traction, and Temperature grades**: See page 185 for more information.

**Maximum permissible inflation pressure**: The greatest amount of air pressure that should ever be put in the tire. This limit is set by the tire manufacturer.

The tire suppliers may have additional markings, notes or warnings such as standard load, radial tubeless, etc.
07 Wheels and tires

Glossary of tire terminology

**Terminology**
- **Tire information placard:** A placard showing the OE (Original Equipment) tire sizes, recommended inflation pressure, and the maximum weight the vehicle can carry.
- **Tire Identification Number (TIN):** A number on the sidewall of each tire providing information about the tire brand and manufacturing plant, tire size and date of manufacturer.
- **Inflation pressure:** A measure of the amount of air in a tire.
- **Standard load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a maximum load at 35 psi [37 psi (2.5 bar) for Metric tires]. Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tires load carrying capability.
- **Extra load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a heavier maximum load at 41 psi [43 psi (2.9 bar) for Metric tires]. Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tires load carrying capability.
- **B-pillar:** The structural member at the side of the vehicle behind the front door.
- **Bead area of the tire:** Area of the tire next to the rim.
- **Sidewall of the tire:** Area between the bead area and the tread.
- **Tread area of the tire:** Area of the perimeter of the tire that contacts the road when mounted on the vehicle.
- **Rim:** The metal support (wheel) for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.
- **Maximum load rating:** A figure indicating the maximum load in pounds and kilograms that can be carried by the tire. This rating is established by the tire manufacturer.
- **Maximum permissible inflation pressure:** The greatest amount of air pressure that should ever be put in the tire. This limit is set by the tire manufacturer.
- **Recommended tire inflation pressure:** Inflation pressure, established by Volvo, which is based on the type of tires that are mounted on a vehicle at the factory. This inflation pressure is affected by the number of occupants in the car, the amount of cargo, and the speed at which the vehicle will be driven for a prolonged period. This information can be found on the tire inflation placard(s) located on the driver’s side B-pillar or on the inside of the fuel filler door on Canadian models, and in the tire inflation table in this chapter.
- **Cold tires:** The tires are considered to be cold when they have the same temperature as the surrounding (ambient) air. This temperature is normally reached after the car has been parked for at least 3 hours. Properly loading your vehicle will provide maximum return of vehicle design performance.

**Cold tires:** The tires are considered to be cold when they have the same temperature as the surrounding (ambient) air. This temperature is normally reached after the car has been parked for at least 3 hours. Properly loading your vehicle will provide maximum return of vehicle design performance.
Loading the vehicle

Before loading your vehicle, familiarize yourself with the following terms for determining your vehicle’s weight ratings, with or without a trailer, from the vehicle’s Federal/Canadian Motor Vehicle Safety Standards (FMVSS/CMVSS) label, and the vehicle’s tire information placard:

Curb weight
The weight of the vehicle including a full tank of fuel and all standard equipment. It does not include passengers, cargo, or optional equipment.

Capacity weight
All weight added to the curb weight, including cargo and optional equipment. When towing, trailer hitch tongue load is also part of cargo weight.

Permissible axle weight
The maximum allowable weight that can be carried by a single axle (front or rear). These numbers are shown on the Federal/Canadian Motor Vehicle Safety Standards (FMVSS/CMVSS) label. The total load on each axle must never exceed its maximum permissible weight.

Gross vehicle weight (GVW)
The vehicle’s curb weight + cargo + passengers.

NOTE
- The location of the various labels in your vehicle can be found on page 262.
- A table listing important weight limits for your vehicle can be found on page 265.

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit

1. Locate the statement "the combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX pounds" on your vehicle’s placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kilograms or XXX pounds.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lbs. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs.
   \(1400 - 750 \times 5 = 650 \text{ lbs.}\)
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual\(^1\) to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

\(\text{See "Towing a trailer"}\)
Vehicle loading

**WARNING**

- Exceeding the permissible axle weight, gross vehicle weight, or any other weight rating limits can cause tire overheating resulting in permanent deformation or catastrophic failure.

- Do not use replacement tires with lower load carrying capacities than the tires that were original equipment on the vehicle because this will lower the vehicle’s GVW rating. Replacement tires with a higher limit than the originals do not increase the vehicle’s GVW rating limitations.
Uniform tire quality gradings

ALL PASSENGER VEHICLE TIRES MUST CONFORM TO FEDERAL SAFETY REQUIREMENTS IN ADDITION TO THESE GRADES

Quality grades can be found, where applicable, on the tire sidewall between the tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example:

Treadwear 200 Traction AA
Temperature A

TREADWEAR
The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one half (1 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and many depart significantly from the norm due to variation in driving habits, maintenance practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

TRACTION
The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C, as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance. The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on braking (straight-ahead) traction tests and is not a measure of cornering (turning) traction.

WARNING
The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on braking (straight-ahead) traction tests and is not a measure of cornering (turning) traction.

TEMPERATURE
The temperature grades are AA (the highest), A, B, and C, representing the tire’s resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a minimum level of performance that all passenger vehicle tires must meet under the Federal Motor Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

WARNING
The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and tire failure.
Snow chains, snow tires, studded tires

Snow chains
Snow chains can be used on your Volvo with the following restrictions:

- Snow chains should be installed on front wheels only. Use only Volvo approved snow chains.
- If accessory, aftermarket or "custom" tires and wheels are installed and are of a size different than the original tires and wheels, chains in some cases CANNOT be used. Sufficient clearances between chains and brakes, suspension and body components must be maintained.
- Some strap-on type chains will interfere with brake components and therefore CANNOT be used.
- **All Wheel Drive models**: Snow chains should only be installed on the front wheels. Only chains adapted for AWD models should be used.

Consult your Volvo retailer for additional snow chain information.

**CAUTION**

- Check local regulations regarding the use of snow chains before installing.
- Always follow the chain manufacturer’s installation instructions carefully. Install chains as tightly as possible and retighten periodically.
- Never exceed the chain manufacturer’s specified maximum speed limit. (Under no circumstances should you exceed 31 mph (50 km/h).
- Avoid bumps, holes or sharp turns when driving with snow chains.
- The handling of the vehicle can be adversely affected when driving with chains. Avoid fast or sharp turns as well as locked wheel braking.

**NOTE**

Please consult state or provincial regulations restricting the use of studded winter tires before installing such tires.

Snow tires, studded tires

**Tires for winter use:**
- Owners who live in or regularly commute through areas with sustained periods of snow or icy driving conditions are strongly advised to fit suitable winter tires to help retain the highest degree of traction.
- It is important to install winter tires on all four wheels to help retain traction during cornering, braking, and accelerating. Fail-
**Temporary spare**

The spare tire in your car is called a "Temporary Spare".

Recommended tire pressure (see the placard on the B-pillar or on the fuel filler door) should be maintained irrespective of which position on the car the temporary spare tire is used on.

In the event of damage to this tire, a new one can be purchased from your Volvo retailer.

---

**WARNING**

Current legislation prohibits the use of the "Temporary Spare" tire other than as a temporary replacement for a punctured tire. It must be replaced as soon as possible by a standard tire. Road holding and handling may be affected with the "Temporary Spare" in use. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) with the "Temporary Spare" in use.

---

**CAUTION**

The car must not be driven with wheels of different dimensions or with a spare tire other than the one that came with the car. The use of different size wheels can seriously damage your car’s transmission.
Wheel nuts

There are two different types of wheel nut, depending on whether the wheels are steel or aluminum.

**Steel rims – low nut**
Steel rims are normally secured using the low type of nut, although steel rims may also use the high type.

**Aluminum wheels – high nut**
Only the high type of nut can be used for aluminum wheels. This is considerably different from other types of nut because it has a rotating conical thrust washer.

**WARNING**
Never use the short type of nut for aluminum wheels. This could cause the wheel to come loose.

**NOTE**
This nut can also be used on steel wheels.

**Lockable wheel nut**
If steel wheels with lockable wheel nuts are used in combination with wheel covers, the lockable wheel nut must be fitted to the stud nearest the air valve. The wheel cover cannot otherwise be installed on the wheel.
The arrows show the direction of rotation of the tire

**Summer and winter tires**
- When switching between summer and winter tires, mark the tires to indicate where they were mounted on the car, e.g., LF = left front, RR = right rear
- Tires with tread designed to roll in only one direction are marked with an arrow on the sidewall.
- Incorrectly mounted tires impair the car’s braking properties and ability to force aside rain, snow and slush.
- The tires with the most tread should always be at the rear (to reduce the risk of skidding).
- Contact a Volvo workshop if you are unsure about the tread depth.

**Tire rotation**
Your vehicle has no recommended tire rotation. The following information is intended to help you understand why.

**Tread set**
As a tire ages and the rubber cures, front and rear tires set at different angles. Therefore, if tires are rotated, the tread will eventually set at an angle that is a compromise. Even if ride, handling, and road noise may still seem acceptable, they may not be optimal. Further, tires that are rotated, but not on a regular basis, may actually cause more tire noise, faster tire wear, and unpleasant changes in steering feel and vehicle handling.

A tire that can fully adapt to its position will provide better steering feel, lower tire noise, and better fuel economy.

**Braking stability performance**
Your vehicle is driven mainly by the front tires, which will wear faster. This can be beneficial. Having more tread on the rear tires will help reduce oversteer. Oversteer is when a vehicle wants to keep turning because of momentum and dynamic forces on its suspension.

**Suspension wear diagnostics**
Every suspension needs periodic inspection and maintenance. A tire’s wear pattern can be an aid in detecting a suspension problem. Each tire, if left in place, tells a story about the suspension. Tire rotation, on the other hand, could make suspension wear harder to detect. Early detection is very important, because suspension problems can make tire wear worse.

If you do rotate your tires...
Please follow the tire manufacturer’s recommendations, as outlined in the tire manufacturer’s tire warranty pamphlet.

Your Volvo retailer can also provide guidance based on your particular driving circumstances.
The spare tire, jack, and crank are located under the carpet on the floor of the cargo area. To change a tire:

1. **Apply the parking brake.**
2. **Put the gear selector in Park (P) or reverse on models with a manual transmission.**
3. **Block the wheels that are on the ground with wooden blocks or large stones.**
4. **Remove the wheel cap (where applicable) using the lug wrench in the tool bag.**

5. **With the car still on the ground, use the lug wrench to loosen the wheel nuts 1/2–1 turn by exerting downward pressure. Turn the nuts counterclockwise to loosen.**

6. **There are two jack attachment points on each side of the car. Position the jack correctly in the attachment (see the illustration) and crank while simultaneously guiding the base of the jack to the ground. The base of the jack must be flat on a level, firm, non-slippery surface. Before raising the car, check that the jack is still correctly positioned in the attachment.**

7. **Raise the vehicle until the wheel to be changed is lifted off the ground.**
8. **Unscrew the wheel nuts completely and carefully remove the wheel so as not to damage the threads on the studs.**
Changing a wheel

**WARNING**
- The jack must correctly engage the jack attachment.
- Be sure the jack is on a firm, level, non-slippery surface.
- Never allow any part of your body to be extended under a car supported by a jack.
- Use the jack intended for the car when changing a tire. For any other job, use stands to support the car.
- Apply the parking brake and put the gear selector in the Park (P) position or reverse on models with a manual transmission.
- Block the wheels standing on the ground, use rigid wooden blocks or large stones.
- The jack should be kept well-greased and clean, and should not be damaged.
- No objects should be placed between the base of jack and the ground, or between the jack and the attachment bar on the vehicle.

**Installing the wheel**
1. Clean the contact surfaces on the wheel and hub.
2. Lift the wheel and place it on the hub.
3. Install the wheel nuts and tighten hand-tight. Using the lug wrench, tighten crosswise until all nuts are snug.
4. Lower the vehicle to the ground and alternately tighten the bolts crosswise to 81 ft. lbs. (110 Nm).
5. Install the wheel cap (where applicable).

**Returning the jack to its storage space** The jack (certain models) and tools should be returned to their correct storage places after use.
- On vehicles equipped with a jack and spare wheel, the jack should be cranked down to the position shown in the illustration.
- On vehicles equipped with the tire sealing system, the jack should be cranked down as far as possible and returned to its storage position in the foam block.

**WARNING** The jack and any tools should always be returned to their proper storage compartments after use to help keep them securely in place in the event of sudden braking, etc.
Tire Sealing System

Introduction
Certain models are equipped with a tire sealing system that enables you to temporarily seal a hole in the tread surface and re-inflate a flat tire, or to adjust a tire’s inflation pressure.

The system consists of an air compressor, a container for the sealing compound, wiring to connect the system to the vehicle’s electrical system via one of the 12-volt sockets, and a hose used to connect the system to the tire’s inflation valve.

The 12-volt sockets are located in the front tunnel console and on the rear side of the tunnel console, in the rear seat.

Accessing the tire sealing system
The tire sealing system is stowed under the floor of the cargo area. To access it:

1. Fold up or remove any carpet or other floor covering.
2. Open the floor hatch.
3. Lift out the tire sealing system.

NOTE
- The tire sealing system is only intended to seal holes on the tire’s tread area, not the sidewall.
- Tires with large holes or tears cannot be repaired with the tire sealing system.

WARNING
- After using the tire sealing system, the vehicle should not be driven farther than approximately 120 miles (200 km).
- Have the tire inspected by a trained and qualified Volvo service technician as soon as possible to determine if it can be permanently repaired or must be replaced.
- The vehicle should not be driven faster than 50 mph (80 km/h) while using a tire that has been temporarily repaired with the tire sealing system.
- After using the tire sealing system, drive carefully and avoid abrupt steering maneuvers and sudden stops.

Tire sealing system—overview

1. Speed limit sticker
2. On/Off switch
3. Electrical wire
4. Bottle holder (orange cover)
5. Protective hose cover
6. Air release knob
7. Hose
8. Bottle with sealing compound
9. Air pressure gauge
WARNING

Please keep the following points in mind when using the tire sealing system:

- The sealing compound bottle (no. 8 in the illustration) contains 1.2-Ethanol and natural rubber-latex. These substances are harmful if swallowed.
- The contents of this bottle may cause allergic skin reactions or otherwise be potentially harmful to the skin, the central nervous system, and the eyes.

Precautions:

- Keep out of reach of children.
- Do not ingest the contents.
- Avoid prolonged or repeated contact with the skin.
- Hands should be washed thoroughly after handling.

First aid:

- Skin: Wash affected areas of skin with soap and water. Get medical attention if symptoms occur.
- Eyes: Flush with plenty of water for at least 15 minutes, occasionally lifting the upper and lower eyelids. Get medical attention if symptoms occur.

Inhalation: Move the person to fresh air. If irritation persists, get medical attention.

Stage 1: The hole is sealed by pumping sealing compound into the tire. The car is then driven a short distance to distribute the sealing compound in the tire.

NOTE

Do not remove any foreign objects (nails, etc.) from the tire before using the sealing system.

Stage 2: The tire’s inflation pressure is checked and adjusted if necessary.

WARNING

- Never leave the tire sealing system unattended when it is operating.
- Keep the tire sealing system away from children.
- Be sure the vehicle is parked safely off the road and away from moving traffic.
- Apply the parking brake.

Stage 1: Sealing the hole

1. Open the cover on the tire sealing kit.
2. Peel off the speed limit sticker and affix it to the steering wheel hub where it will be clearly visible to the driver.
07 Wheels and tires

Tire Sealing System

3. Ensure that the on/off switch is in position 0 (the 0 side of the switch should be pressed down).

4. Put on the gloves included in the tire sealing system.

**WARNING**
Contact with the sealing compound may cause skin irritation. If contact occurs, wash the affected area immediately with soap and water.

5. Unscrew the orange cover over the bottle holder and unscrew the cap on the bottle of sealing compound.

**NOTE**
Do not break the seal on the bottle. This occurs automatically when the bottle is screwed into the holder.

6. Screw the bottle into the bottle holder.

7. Remove the valve cap from the tire's inflation valve and screw the tire sealing system's hose connector onto the valve as tightly as possible by hand.

8. Connect the electrical wire to the nearest 12-volt socket in the vehicle.

9. Start the vehicle's engine.

10. Start the tire sealing system's compressor by pressing the on/off switch to position I.

**WARNING**
- Never stand next to the tire being inflated when the compressor is in operation.
- If cracks, bubbles, etc. form on the tire, switch off the compressor immediately.
- If there is visible damage to the sidewall or the rim, the tire cannot be repaired. The vehicle should not be driven if this occurs. Contact a towing service or Volvo On Call Roadside Assistance if applicable.

**NOTE**
The air pressure gauge will temporarily show an increase in pressure to approximately 88 psi (6 bar) while the sealing compound is being pumped into the tire. The pressure should return to a normal level after approximately 30 seconds.

11. Within seven minutes, inflate the tire to between 22—44 psi (1.8—3.0 bar). Switch off the compressor briefly to get a clear reading from the pressure gauge. The compressor should not be used for more than 10 minutes at a time to avoid overheating.
**07 Wheels and tires**

**Tire Sealing System**

**CAUTION**
The compressor should not be used for more than 10 minutes at a time to avoid overheating.

**WARNING**
If the pressure remains below 22 psi (1.8 bar) after approximately seven minutes, turn off the compressor. In this case, the hole is too large to be sealed and the vehicle should not be driven.

12. Switch off the compressor and disconnect the electrical wire from the 12-volt socket.
13. Unscrew the hose from the tire’s inflation valve and reinstall the valve cap.
14. Immediately drive the vehicle for approximately 2 miles (3 km) at a maximum speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) to distribute the sealing compound in the tire.

**NOTE**
- Safely stow the tire sealing system in a convenient place as it will soon be used again to check the tire’s inflation pressure.
- The empty bottle of sealing compound cannot be removed from the bottle holder. Consult a trained and qualified Volvo service technician to have the bottle removed and properly disposed of.

**WARNING**
If heavy vibrations, unsteady steering behavior, or noises should occur while driving, reduce speed and park the vehicle in a safe place. Recheck the tire for bumps, cracks, or other visible damage, and recheck its inflation pressure. If the pressure is below 19 psi (1.3 bar), do not continue driving. Have the vehicle towed to a trained and qualified Volvo service technician.

**CAUTION**
The compressor should not be used for more than 10 minutes at a time to avoid overheating.

**WARNING**
If you interrupt your trip for more than 1 hour, check the inflation pressure in the damaged tire again before continuing.

**Replacing the sealing compound container**
The sealing compound container must be replaced if:
- the tire sealing system has been used to repair a tire
- the container’s expiration date has passed (see the date on decal).

**Stage 2: Checking inflation pressure**
1. Connect the tire sealing system as described in stage 1.
2. Refer to the inflation pressure tables for the correct inflation pressure. If the tire needs to be inflated, start the tire sealing system’s compressor. If necessary, release air from the tire by turning the air release knob counterclockwise.
07 Wheels and tires

Tire Sealing System

**NOTE**

- After use, the sealing compound bottle, the hose, and certain other system components must be replaced. Please consult your Volvo retailer for replacement parts.
- If the sealing compound bottle’s expiration date has passed, please take it to a Volvo retailer or a recycling station that can properly dispose of harmful substances.

**Inflating tires**

The tire sealing system can be used to inflate the tires. To do so:

1. Park the car in a safe place.
2. The compressor should be switched off. Ensure that the on/off switch is in position 0 (the 0 side of the switch should be pressed down).
3. Take out the electrical wire and hose.
4. Remove the valve cap from the tire’s inflation valve and screw the hose connector onto the valve as tightly as possible by hand.
5. Connect the electrical wire to the nearest 12-volt socket in the vehicle.
6. Start the vehicle’s engine.

**WARNING**

- The vehicle’s engine should be running when the tire sealing system is used to avoid battery drain. Therefore, be sure the vehicle is parked in a well ventilated place, or outdoors, before using the system.
- Children should never be left unattended in the vehicle when the engine is running.

7. Check the tire’s inflation pressure on the gauge. Switch off the compressor briefly to get a clear reading from the pressure gauge.
8. Refer to the tire inflation tables for the correct inflation pressure. If the tire needs to be inflated, start the tire sealing system’s compressor (press the on/off switch to position I). If necessary, release air from the tire by turning the air release knob counterclockwise.

**CAUTION**

The compressor should not be used for more than 10 minutes at a time to avoid overheating.

9. Turn off the compressor (press the on/off switch to position 0) when the correct inflation pressure has been reached.
10. Unscrew the hose from the tire’s inflation valve and reinstall the valve cap.
11. Disconnect the electrical wire from the 12-volt socket.
Introduction

The tire pressure monitoring system uses sensors mounted in the tire valves to check inflation pressure levels. When the vehicle is moving at a speed of approximately 20 mph (30 km/h) or faster, these sensors transmit inflation pressure data to a receiver located in the vehicle.

NOTE

USA – FCC ID: KR5S122780002

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

When low inflation pressure is detected, TPMS will light up the tire pressure warning light (also referred to as a telltale) in the instrument panel, and will display a message in the text window. The wording of this message is determined by the degree of inflation pressure loss.

NOTE

If a fault occurs in TPMS, the tire pressure warning light will flash for approximately 1 minute and TIRE PRESS SYST SERVICE REQUIRED will be displayed.

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle’s handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver’s responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

NOTE
- TPMS indicates low tire pressure but does not replace normal tire maintenance. For information on correct tire pressure, please refer to the tables beginning, see page 178, or consult your Volvo retailer.
- The tire pressure warning light will not identify which tire is underinflated. Be sure to check all four tires.
- A certain amount of air seepage from the tires occurs naturally and tire pressure fluctuates with seasonal changes in temperature. Always check tire pressure regularly.

Erasing warning messages
When a low tire pressure warning message has been displayed, and the tire pressure warning light has come on:
1. Use a tire pressure gauge to check the inflation pressure of all four tires.
2. Re-inflate the tire(s) to the correct pressure (consult the tire pressure placard or the tables, see page 178).
3. In certain cases, it may be necessary to drive the vehicle for several minutes at a speed of 20 mph (30 km/h) or faster. This will erase the warning text and the warning light will go out.

WARNING
Incorrect inflation pressure could lead to tire failure, resulting in a loss of control of the vehicle.

Changing wheels with TPMS
Please note the following when changing or replacing the factory installed TPMS wheels/tires on the vehicle:
- Only the factory-mounted wheels are equipped with TPMS sensors in the valves.
- If the vehicle is equipped with a temporary spare tire, this tire does not have a TPMS sensor.
- If wheels without TPMS sensors are mounted on the vehicle, SERVICE REQUIRED will be displayed each time the vehicle is driven above 25 mph (40 km/h) for 10 minutes or more.
- Once TPMS sensors are properly installed, the warning message should not reappear. If the message is still displayed, drive the vehicle for several minutes at a speed of 20 mph (30 km/h) or faster to erase the message.
- Volvo recommends that TPMS sensors be fitted on all wheels used on the vehicle.

Volvo does not recommend moving sensors back and forth between sets of wheels.

NOTE
- If you change to tires with a different recommended inflation pressure, the TPMS system must be recalibrated to these tires. This must be done by an authorized Volvo retailer or workshop.
- If a tire is changed, or if the TPMS sensor is moved to another wheel, the sensor’s seal, nut, and valve core should be replaced.
- When installing TPMS sensors, the vehicle must be parked for at least 15 minutes with the ignition off. If the vehicle is driven within 15 minutes, a TPMS error message will be displayed.

CAUTION
When inflating tires with TPMS valves, press the pump’s mouthpiece straight onto the valve to help avoid bending or otherwise damaging the valve.
Washing and cleaning the car............................................................... 202
Paint touch up....................................................................................... 206
Washing the car

The following points should be kept in mind when washing and cleaning the car:

- The car should be washed at regular intervals since dirt, dust, insects and tar spots adhere to the paint and may cause damage. To help prevent corrosion, it is particularly important to wash the car frequently in the wintertime when salt has been used on the roads.

- Avoid washing your car in direct sunlight. Doing so may cause detergents and wax to dry out and become abrasive. To avoid scratching, use lukewarm water to soften the dirt before you wash with a soft sponge, and plenty of sudsy water.

- **Bird droppings**: Remove from paintwork as soon as possible. Otherwise the finish may be permanently damaged.

- A detergent can be used to facilitate the softening of dirt and oil.

- A water-soluble grease solvent may be used in cases of sticky dirt. However, use a wash place equipped with a drainage separator.

- Dry the car with a clean chamois and remember to clean the drain holes in the doors and rocker panels.

- Tar spots can be removed with kerosene or tar remover after the car has been washed.

- A stiff-bristle brush and lukewarm soapy water can be used to clean the wiper blades. Frequent cleaning of the windshield and wiper blades improves visibility considerably and also helps prolong the service life of the wiper blades.

- Wash off the dirt from the underside (wheel housings, fenders, etc).

- In areas of high industrial fallout, more frequent washing is recommended.

- After cleaning the engine, the spark plug wells should be inspected for water and blown dry if necessary.

**NOTE**

When washing the car, remember to remove dirt from the drain holes in the doors and sills.

**CAUTION**

- Avoid waxing or polishing plastic or rubber components
- Polishing chromed strips can wear away or damage the surface
- Polishes containing abrasive substances should not be used

**Exterior components**

Volvo recommends the use of special cleaning products, available at your Volvo retailer, for cleaning colored plastic, rubber, or ornamental components such as chromed strips on the exterior of your vehicle. The instructions for using these products should be followed carefully. Solvents or stain removers should not be used.
Washing and cleaning the car

**CAUTION**
- During high pressure washing, the spray mouthpiece must never be closer to the vehicle than 13" (30 cm). Do not spray into the locks.
- Dirt, snow, etc., on the headlights can reduce lighting capacity considerably. Clean the headlights regularly, for example when refueling.
- When washing or steam cleaning the engine, avoid spraying water or steam directly on the electrical components or toward the rear side of the engine.
- Always close the moonroof (option) and sun shade before washing your vehicle.
- Never use abrasive cleaning agents on the moonroof.
- Never use wax on the rubber seals around the moonroof.

**Automatic washing – simple and quick**
We do **NOT** recommend washing your car in an automatic wash during the first six months (because the paint will not have hardened sufficiently).

An automatic wash is a simple and quick way to clean your car, but it is worth remembering that it may not be as thorough as when you yourself go over the car with sponge and water.

Keeping the underbody clean is most important, especially in the winter. Some automatic washers do not have facilities for washing the underbody.

**CAUTION**
- Before driving into an automatic car wash, turn off the optional rain sensor to avoid damaging the windshield wipers.
- Make sure that side view mirrors, auxiliary lamps, etc, are secure, and that any antenna(s) are retracted or removed. Otherwise there is risk of the machine dislodging them.
- **Chromed wheels:** Clean chrome-plated wheels using the same detergents used for the body of the vehicle. Aggressive wheel-cleaning agents can permanently stain chrome-plated wheels.

**WARNING**
- When the car is driven immediately after being washed, apply the brakes several times in order to remove any moisture from the brake linings.
- Engine cleaning agents should not be used when the engine is warm. This constitutes a fire risk.

**Exterior lighting**
Condensation may form temporarily on the inside of the lenses of exterior lights such as headlights, fog lights, or taillights. This is normal and the lights are designed to withstand moisture. Normally, condensation will dissipate after the lights have been on for a short time.

**Polishing and Waxing**
- Normally, polishing is not required during the first year after delivery, however, waxing may be beneficial.
- Before applying polish or wax the vehicle must be washed and dried. Tar spots can be removed with kerosene or tar remover. Difficult spots may require a fine rubbing compound.
- After polishing use liquid or paste wax.
- Several commercially available products contain both polish and wax.
- Waxing alone does not substitute for polishing a dull surface.
- A wide range of polymer-based waxes can be purchased today. These waxes are easy to use and produce a long-lasting, high-gloss finish that protects the bodywork against oxidation, road dirt and fading.
- Do not polish or wax your vehicle in direct sunlight (the surface of the vehicle should not be warmer than 113 °F (45 °C)).

**Polishing and Waxing**

Normally, polishing is not required during the first year after delivery, however, waxing may be beneficial.

- Before applying polish or wax the vehicle must be washed and dried. Tar spots can be removed with kerosene or tar remover. Difficult spots may require a fine rubbing compound.
- After polishing use liquid or paste wax.
- Several commercially available products contain both polish and wax.
- Waxing alone does not substitute for polishing a dull surface.
- A wide range of polymer-based waxes can be purchased today. These waxes are easy to use and produce a long-lasting, high-gloss finish that protects the bodywork against oxidation, road dirt and fading.
- Do not polish or wax your vehicle in direct sunlight (the surface of the vehicle should not be warmer than 113 °F (45 °C)).
Washing and cleaning the car

**CAUTION**

Volvo does not recommend the use of long-life or durable paint protection coatings, some of which may claim to prevent pitting, fading, oxidation, etc. These coatings have not been tested by Volvo for compatibility with your vehicle’s clear coat. Some of them may cause the clear coat to soften, crack, or cloud. Damage caused by application of paint protection coatings may not be covered under your vehicle’s paint warranty.

Upholstery care

**Fabric**

Clean with soapy water or a detergent. For more difficult spots caused by oil, ice cream, shoe polish, grease, etc., use a clothing/fabric stain remover. Consult your Volvo retailer.

**Interior plastic components**

Cleaning interior plastic components should be done with a cleaning agent specially designed for this purpose. Consult your Volvo retailer.

**Alcantera™ suede-like material**

Suede-like upholstery can be cleaned with a soft cloth and mild soap solution.

**Leather care**

Volvo’s leather upholstery is manufactured with a protectant to repel soiling. Over time, sunlight, grease and dirt can break down the protection. Staining, cracking, scuffing, and fading can result.

Volvo offers an easy-to-use, non-greasy leather care kit formulated to clean and beautify your vehicle’s leather, and to renew the protective qualities of its finish. The cleaner removes dirt and oil buildup. The light cream protectant restores a barrier against soil and sunlight.

Volvo also offers a special leather softener that should be applied after the cleaner and protectant. It leaves leather soft and smooth, and reduces friction between leather and other finishes in the vehicle.

Volvo recommends cleaning, protecting and conditioning your vehicle’s leather two to four times a year. Ask your Volvo retailer about Leather Care Kit 951 0251 and Leather Softener 943 7429.

**Cleaning leather upholstery**

1. Pour leather cleaner on a damp sponge and squeeze it until the cleaner foams.
2. Apply the foam to the stain by moving the sponge with circular movements.
3. Dampen the stain thoroughly with the sponge. Let the sponge absorb the stain, do not rub.
4. Dry the stain with soft paper towels or a towel, and allow the leather to dry completely.

**Protecting leather upholstery**

1. Put a small amount of protectant cream on a cloth and apply a thin coating of cream to the upholstery with light circular movements.
2. Allow the leather to dry for 20 minutes.

This will help the leather resist staining and protect against sunlight’s harmful UV rays.
Washing and cleaning the car

**CAUTION**

- Under no circumstances should gasoline, naphtha or similar cleaning agents be used on the plastic or the leather since these can cause damage.
- Take extra care when removing stains such as ink or lipstick since the coloring can spread.
- Use solvents sparingly. Too much solvent can damage the seat padding.
- Start from the outside of the stain and work toward the center.
- Sharp objects (e.g. pencils or pens in a pocket) or Velcro fasteners on clothing may damage the textile upholstery.
- Clothing that is not colorfast, such as new jeans or suede garments, may stain the upholstery.

**Cleaning the seat belts**

Clean only with lukewarm water and a mild soap solution.

**Cleaning floor mats**

The floor mats should be vacuumed or brushed clean regularly, especially during winter when they should be taken out for drying. Spots on textile mats can be removed with a mild detergent. For best protection in winter, Volvo recommends the use of Volvo rubber floor mats. Consult your Volvo retailer.
Paint touch up

**Touching up minor paint damage**
Paint damage requires immediate attention to avoid rusting. Make it a habit to check the finish regularly - when washing the vehicle for instance. Touch-up if necessary.

Paint repairs require special equipment and skill. Contact a trained and authorized Volvo service technician for any extensive damage. Minor scratches can be repaired by using Volvo touch-up paint.

**Color code**

When ordering touch-up paint from your Volvo retailer, make sure you have the right color. Use the paint code indicated on the model plate (1 in the illustration).

**Minor stone chips and scratches**

- Primer – can
- Paint – touch-up pen
- Brush
- Masking tape

When touching up the vehicle, it should be clean and dry. The surface temperature should be above 60° F (15° C).

If the stone chip has not penetrated down to the metal and an undamaged layer of paint remains, the touch-up paint can be applied as soon as the spot has been cleaned.

**Deep scratches**

1. Place a strip of masking tape over the damaged surface. Pull the tape off so that any loose flakes of paint adhere to it.

2. Thoroughly mix the primer and apply it with a small brush. When the primer surface is dry, the paint can be applied using a brush. Mix the paint thoroughly; apply several thin paint coats and let dry after each application.

3. If there is a longer scratch, you may want to protect surrounding paint by masking it off.
Volvo maintenance ................................................................. 210
Maintaining your car ......................................................... 212
Hood ................................................................................. 214
Engine compartment ......................................................... 215
Engine oil ................................................................. 216
Fluids ............................................................................ 218
Wiper blades ............................................................... 220
Battery ........................................................................... 221
Replacing bulbs ............................................................. 223
Fuses ............................................................................. 230
09 Maintenance and servicing

Volvo maintenance

General
Volvo advises you to follow the maintenance program outlined in the Warranty and Service Records Information booklet. This maintenance program contains inspections and services necessary for the proper function of your vehicle. The maintenance services contain several checks that require special tools and training, and therefore must be performed by a qualified technician. To keep your Volvo in top condition, specify time-tested and proven Genuine Volvo Parts and Accessories.

The Federal Clean Air Act – U.S.
The Federal Clean Air Act requires vehicle manufacturers to furnish written instructions to the ultimate purchaser to assure the proper servicing and function of the components that control emissions. These services, which are listed in the “Warranty and Service Records Information” booklet, are not covered by the warranty. You will be required to pay for labor and material used.

Maintenance
Your Volvo passed several major inspections before it was delivered to you, in accordance with Volvo specifications. The maintenance procedures outlined in the Warranty and Service Records Information booklet, many of which will positively affect your vehicle’s emissions, should be performed as indicated. It is recommended that receipts for vehicle emission maintenance be retained in case questions arise concerning maintenance. Inspection and maintenance should also be performed anytime a malfunction is observed or suspected.

Applicable warranties – U.S/Canada
In accordance with applicable U.S. and Canadian regulations, the following list of warranties is provided.

- New Vehicle Limited Warranty
- Parts and Accessories Limited Warranty
- Corrosion Protection Limited Warranty
- Seat Belt and Supplemental Restraint Systems Limited Warranty
- Emission Design and Defect Warranty
- Emission Performance Warranty

These are the federal warranties; other warranties are provided as required by state/provincial law. Refer to your separate Warranty and Service Records Information booklet for detailed information concerning each of the warranties.

Periodic maintenance helps minimize emissions
Periodic maintenance will help keep your vehicle running well. Your Warranty and Service Records Information booklet provides a comprehensive periodic maintenance schedule up to 150,000 miles (240,000 km) of vehicle maintenance. The schedule includes components that affect vehicle emissions. This page describes some of the emission-related components.

Vehicle Event Data (Black Box)
Your vehicle’s driving and safety systems employ computers that monitor, and share with each other, information about your vehicle’s operation. One or more of these computers may store what they monitor, either during normal vehicle operation or in a crash or near-crash event. Stored information may be read and used by:

- Volvo Car Corporation
- service and repair facilities
• law enforcement or government agencies
• others who may assert a legal right to know, or who obtain your consent to know such information.
Owner maintenance

Periodic maintenance requirements and intervals are described in your vehicle’s Warranty and Service Records Information booklet.

The following points can be carried out between the normally scheduled maintenance services.

Each time the car is refueled:
- Check the engine oil level.
- Clean the windshield, windshield wipers, headlights, and taillights.

Monthly:
- Check cold tire pressure in all tires. Inspect the tires for wear.
- Check that engine coolant and other fluid levels are between the indicated “min” and “max” markings.
- Clean interior glass surfaces with a glass cleaner and soft paper towels.
- Wipe driver information displays with a soft cloth.
- Visually inspect battery terminals for corrosion. Corrosion may indicate a loose terminal connector, or a battery near the end of its useful service life. Consult a trained and qualified Volvo service technician for additional information.

As needed:
- Wash the car, including the undercarriage, to reduce wear that can be caused by a buildup of dirt, and corrosion that can be caused by salt residues.
- Clean leaves and twigs from air intake vents at the base of the windshield, and from other places where they may collect.

NOTE
Complete service information for qualified technicians is available online for purchase or subscription at www.volvotechinfo.com.

Emission inspection readiness

What is an Onboard Diagnostic System (OBD II)?
OBD II is part of your vehicle’s computerized engine management system. It stores diagnostic information about your vehicle’s emission controls. It can light the Check Engine light (MIL) if it detects an emission control “fault.” A “fault” is a component or system that is not performing within an expected range. A fault may be permanent or temporary. OBD II will store a message about any fault.

How Do States Use OBD II for Emission Inspections?
Many states connect a computer directly to a vehicle’s OBD II system. The inspector can then read “faults.” In some states, this type of inspection has replaced the tailpipe emission test.

How Can My Vehicle Fail OBD II Emission Inspection?
Your vehicle can fail OBD II emission inspection for any of the following reasons.
- If your Check Engine (MIL) light is lit, your vehicle may fail inspection.
- If your vehicle’s Check Engine light was lit, but went out without any action on your part, OBD II will still have a recorded fault. Your vehicle may pass or fail, depending on the inspection practices in your area.
- If you had recent service that required disconnecting the battery, OBD II diagnostic information may be incomplete and “not ready” for inspection. A vehicle that is not ready may fail inspection.

How Can I Prepare for My Next OBD II Emission Inspection?
- If your Check Engine (MIL) light is lit – or was lit but went out without service, have
your vehicle diagnosed and, if necessary, serviced by a qualified Volvo technician.

- If you recently had service for a lit Check Engine light, or if you had service that required disconnecting the battery, a period of driving is necessary to bring the OBD II system to “ready” for inspection. A half-hour trip of mixed stop-and-go/highway driving is typically needed to allow OBD II to reach readiness. Your Volvo retailer can provide you with more information on planning a trip.

- Maintain your vehicle in accordance with your vehicle’s maintenance schedule.
Opening the hood

To open the hood:

1. Pull the lever located under the left side of the dash to release the hood lock.
2. Lift the hood slightly.
3. Press up the release control located under the front edge of the hood (at the center) up to the right, and lift the hood.

**WARNING**

Check that the hood locks engage properly when closed.
Cooling system expansion tank
2 Power steering fluid reservoir (concealed behind the headlight)
3 Dipstick – engine oil
4 Radiator
5 Cooling fan
6 Washer fluid reservoir
7 Engine oil filler cap
8 Brake/clutch fluid reservoir
9 Battery
10 Relay/fuse box
11 Air cleaner

WARNING
The cooling fan may start or continue to operate (for up to 6 minutes) after the engine has been switched off.
Changing engine oil and oil filter

See page 269 for oil specifications. Refer to the Warranty and Service Records Information booklet for information on the oil change intervals.

Volvo recommends Castrol.

NOTE

- Volvo does not recommend the use of oil additives.
- Synthetic oil is not used when the oil is changed at the normal maintenance intervals except at owner request and at additional charge. Please consult a trained and qualified Volvo service technician.

Checking and adding oil

The oil level should be checked every time the vehicle is refueled. This is especially important during the period up to the first scheduled maintenance service.

- The car should be parked on a level surface when the oil is checked.
- If the engine is warm, wait for at least 10–15 minutes after the engine has been switched off before checking the oil.

Checking the oil

1. Pull out the dipstick and wipe it with a lint-free rag.
2. Reinsert the dipstick, pull it out, and check the oil level.
3. Add oil if necessary. If the level is close to the MIN mark, add approximately 1 US quart (1 liter) of oil.
4. Run the engine until it reaches normal operating temperature.
5. Switch off the engine and wait for at least 10–15 minutes and recheck the oil level. If necessary, add oil until the level is near the MAX mark.

CAUTION

- Not checking the oil level regularly can result in serious engine damage if the oil level becomes too low.
- Oil that is lower than the specified quality can damage the engine.
- Always add oil of the same type and viscosity as already used.
- Never fill oil above the MAX mark. This could cause an increase in oil consumption.
**WARNING**

Do not allow oil to spill onto or come into contact with hot exhaust pipe surfaces

**NOTE**

Volvo uses different systems to indicate a low oil level or pressure. Some models have an oil pressure sensor, in which case a warning symbol (see page 55) is used to indicate low oil pressure. Other models have an oil level sensor, in which case the driver is alerted by the warning symbol in the center of the instrument panel and a text in the information display. Some models use both systems. Contact an authorized Volvo retailer for more information.
Washer fluid

The washer fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment and holds approximately 6.8 US qts (6.5 liters). During cold weather, the reservoir should be filled with windshield washer solvent containing antifreeze.

Coolant

Normally, the coolant does not need to be changed. If the system must be drained, consult a trained and qualified Volvo service technician.

**CAUTION**

- If necessary, top up the cooling system with Volvo Genuine Coolant/Antifreeze only (a 50/50 mix of water and antifreeze).
- Different types of antifreeze/coolant may not be mixed.
- If the cooling system is drained, it should be flushed with clean water or premixed anti-freeze before it is refilled with the correct mixture of water/anti-freeze.
- The cooling system must always be kept filled to the correct level, and the level must be between the MIN and MAX marks. If it is not kept filled, there can be high local temperatures in the engine which could result in damage. Check coolant regularly!
- Do not top up with water only. This reduces the rust-protective and anti-freeze qualities of the coolant and has a lower boiling point. It can also cause damage to the cooling system if it should freeze.
- Do not use chlorinated tap water in the vehicles cooling system.
WARNING
Never remove the radiator cap while the engine is warm. Wait until the vehicle cools. If it is necessary to top off the coolant when the engine is warm, unscrew the expansion tank cap slowly so that the overpressure dissipates.

Brake fluid

Brake fluid reservoir

The brake fluid should always be between the MIN and MAX marks on the side of the reservoir. Check, without removing the cap, that there is sufficient fluid in the reservoir.

Fluid type: DOT 4+ boiling point >536 °F

Replace: The fluid should be replaced according to the intervals specified in the Warranty and Service Records Information booklet. When driving under extremely hard conditions (mountain driving, etc.), it may be necessary to replace the fluid more often. Consult your Volvo retailer. Always entrust brake fluid changing to a trained and qualified Volvo service technician.

Power steering fluid

The fluid level is checked at each service interval.

Fluid type: Volvo power steering fluid or equivalent.

Replace: No fluid change required.

WARNING
If a problem should occur in the power steering system or if the vehicle has no electrical current and must be towed, it is still possible to steer the vehicle. However, keep in mind that greater effort will be required to turn the steering wheel.
Replacing windshield wiper blades

1. Fold out the wiper arm.
2. Press the button on the wiper blade attachment and pull straight out (1), parallel with the wiper arm.
3. Press a new wiper blade (2) until it clicks into place.
4. Ensure the blade is securely attached (3).
5. Fold in the wiper arm.

The wiper blades are different lengths. The blade on the driver’s side is longer than the one on the passenger’s side.

Tailgate wiper blade

1. Fold out the wiper arm.
2. Pull off the wiper blade from the attachment, toward the window.
3. Press the new wiper blade securely into place.

Fold in the wiper arm.

Keeping the windshield/tailgate window and wiper blades clean helps improve visibility and prolongs the service life of the wiper blades. See page 202 for washing instructions.
Battery maintenance
Driving habits and conditions, climate, the number of starts, etc., all affect the service life and function of the battery. In order for your battery to perform satisfactorily, keep the following in mind:

Check the fluid level in each cell in the battery every 24 months or every 15,000 miles (24,000 km), whichever is sooner.

- Use a screwdriver to open the caps or cover and a flashlight to inspect the level.
- If necessary, add distilled water. The level should never be above the indicator.
- The fluid level should be checked if the battery has been recharged.
- After inspection, be sure the cap over each battery cell or the cover is securely in place.
- Check that the battery cables are correctly connected and properly tightened.
- Never disconnect the battery when the engine is running, or when the key is in the ignition. This could damage the vehicle’s electrical system.
- The battery should be disconnected from the vehicle when a battery charger is used directly on the battery.

WARNING
PROPOSITION 65 WARNING!
Battery posts, terminals, and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the state of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. Wash hands after handling.

Battery symbols:
- Wear protection goggles
- See owner's manual for details
- Keep away from children

Battery replacement
Removing the battery
1. Switch off the ignition and remove the key.
2. Wait at least 5 minutes after switching off the ignition before disconnecting the battery so that all information in the vehicle’s electrical system can be stored in the control modules.

1 More frequently in warm climates.
Battery

3. Remove the cover over the battery.
4. Disconnect the battery negative (ground) cable.
5. Disconnect the positive cable.
6. Remove the front side of the battery box with a screwdriver.
7. Release the clamp holding the battery.
8. Lift out the battery.

**Installing a new battery**
1. Put the battery in place in the engine compartment.
2. Install the battery’s retaining clamp.
3. Reinstall the front side of the battery box.
4. Connect the positive cable.
5. Connect the ground cable.
6. Reinstall the cover over the battery.

**WARNING**
- Never expose the battery to open flame or electric spark.
- Do not smoke near the battery.
- Battery fluid contains sulfuric acid. Do not allow battery fluid to contact eyes, skin, fabrics or painted surfaces. If contact occurs, flush the affected area immediately with water. Obtain medical help immediately if eyes are affected.

**NOTE**
Used batteries should be properly disposed of at a recycling station or similar facility, or taken to your Volvo retailer.
Introduction
Before replacing bulbs in your vehicle, please keep the following points in mind:

NOTE
Never touch the glass of bulbs with your fingers. Grease and oils from your fingers vaporize in the heat and will leave a deposit on the reflector, which will damage it.

The optional Bi-Xenon® headlight bulbs contain trace amounts of mercury. These bulbs should always be disposed of by a trained and qualified Volvo service technician.

Certain bulbs should only be replaced by a trained and qualified Volvo service technician:
- Courtesy lighting
- Reading lights
- Glove compartment lights
- Turn signals and courtesy lights in the side door mirrors
- Brake lights
- Bi-Xenon® headlights, Brake lights

Removing the headlight housing

WARNING
- The engine should not be running when changing bulbs.
- When changing in the headlight housing, if the engine has been running just prior to replacing bulbs, please be aware that components in the engine compartment will be hot.

The entire headlight housing must be lifted out when replacing the high/low beam, parking light, turn signal, and side marker bulbs. To lift out the housing:

1. Remove the key from the ignition and turn the headlight switch to position 0.

2. Open the hood.

3. Pull up the headlight housing’s retaining pin.

4. Pull out the headlight housing.

5. Disconnect the wiring connector by pressing down the clip with your thumb while at the same time pulling the connector with your other hand.
Replacing bulbs

6. Lift out the headlight housing and place it on a soft surface to avoid scratching the lens.

**CAUTION**
When disconnecting the connector, pull on the connector itself and not on the wiring.

After the defective bulb has been replaced, reinsert the housing in the reverse order. Check that the retaining pin is correctly inserted.

**WARNING**
Bi-Xenon headlights (option) – due to the high voltage used by these headlights, these bulbs should only be replaced by a trained and qualified Volvo service technician.

Low beam bulb

1. Open the hood and remove the headlight housing (see page 223 for instructions).
2. Release the retaining clamps on the cover.
3. Release the bulb's retaining spring holding the bulb in place by pressing it inward and downward.
4. Pull out the bulb.

Installing a new bulb

1. Insert the new bulb. It can only be installed in one position.
2. Press the retaining spring inward and upward and slightly to the right until it snaps into place.
3. Press the wiring connector onto the bulb.
4. Put the plastic cover in place.
5. Press the retaining clamps back into place.
6. Reinstall the headlight housing (see page 223).
Replacing bulbs

High beam bulb (halogen)

1. Open the hood.
2. Remove the headlight housing (see page 223).
3. Remove the cover on the upper side of the headlight housing by turning it counterclockwise.

**NOTE**
The halogen high beam bulb has a different socket on vehicles equipped with Bi-Xenon® headlights. On these models, pull the bulb straight out.

**WARNING**
Bi-Xenon® headlights (option) – due to the high voltage used by these headlights, the Bi-Xenon® bulbs should only be replaced by a trained and qualified Volvo service technician.

4. Driver’s side headlight: Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise.
   Passenger’s side headlight: Turn the bulb holder clockwise.
5. Pull out the bulb holder and replace the bulb.
6. Reinstall the bulb holder. It can only be installed in one position.
7. Reinstall the cover on the upper side of the headlight housing by turning it clockwise.
8. Reinstall the headlight housing (see page 223).

Parking light bulb

1. Open the hood.
2. Remove the headlight housing, see page 223.
3. Remove the cover on the upper side of the headlight housing by turning it counterclockwise.
4. Pull out the bulb holder.
5. Replace the bulb.
6. Press the bulb holder back into position. It will click into place.
7. Reinstall the cover on the upper side of the headlight housing by turning it clockwise.
8. Reinstall the headlight housing.
Replacing bulbs

**Turn signal**

1. Open the hood.
2. Remove the headlight housing, see page 223.
3. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
4. Remove the bulb from the holder by pressing it in and twisting it counterclockwise.
5. Insert a new bulb and reinstall the bulb holder in the headlight housing.
6. Reinstall the headlight housing.

**Side marker light**

1. Open the hood.
2. Remove the headlight housing, see page 223.
3. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise, pull it out, and replace the bulb.
4. Reinstall the bulb holder. It can only be installed in one position.
5. Reinstall the headlight housing.

**Front fog light (option)**

1. Switch off all lights and turn the key to position 0.
2. Remove the panel around the fog light housing by inserting a screwdriver as shown in the illustration and pressing the panel outward to release the retaining clips.
3. Grasp the edge of the panel and pull it straight out.
4. Unscrew the screw in the fog light housing and remove it.
5. Turn the bulb counterclockwise and remove it.
Replacing bulbs

6. Insert a new bulb by turning it clockwise (the profile on the bulb holder will correspond with the profile in the base of the bulb).

7. Reinsert the bulb holder. The mark TOP should be upward.

Removing the taillight bulb holder

1. Switch off all lights and turn the key to position 0.

2. Remove the covers (A or B) in the left/right panels to access the bulb holders.

3. Disconnect the wiring connector from the affected bulb holder.

4. Press the catches together and pull out the bulb holder.

5. Replace the defective bulb.

6. Press the wiring connector back into position.

7. Press the bulb holder into place and reinstall the cover.

All bulbs in the taillight cluster can be replaced from the cargo area. To access the bulb holders:

Location of taillight bulbs

1. Brake light (LED)\(^1\)
2. Taillight
3. Parking light
4. Turn signal

\(^1\) The wiring to the LED brake lights is permanently connected to the bulb holder. It should not be removed.
09 Maintenance and servicing

Replacing bulbs

- Back-up light
- Fog light (driver's side only)

**NOTE**

If the message indicating a burned out bulb remains in the information display after the bulb has been replaced, consult a trained and qualified Volvo service technician.

High-level brake light

These bulbs should only be replaced by a trained and qualified Volvo service technician.

License plate lighting

1. Switch off all lights and turn the key to position 0.
2. Remove the screws with a screw driver.
3. Detach the lens (bulb housing) carefully.
4. Replace the defective bulb.
5. Reinstall the entire bulb housing and screw it into place.

Footwell lighting

The footwell lighting is located under the dashboard on the driver’s and passenger’s sides. To replace a bulb:

1. Insert a screwdriver under the edge of the lens. Turn the screwdriver gently to detach the lens.
2. Remove the defective bulb.
3. Install a new bulb.
4. Press the lens back into place.
Replacing bulbs

Cargo area lighting

1. Insert a screwdriver and turn it gently to detach the bulb housing.
2. Remove the defective bulb.
3. Install a new bulb.
4. Press the bulb housing back into place.

Vanity mirror lighting

1. Insert a screwdriver under the center of the lower edge of the mirror, turn it, and carefully pry up the lugs at the edge.
2. Move the screwdriver under the edge on the left and right-hand sides (near the black rubber sections) and pry carefully to release the lower edge of the mirror.
3. Pry carefully and lift out the entire mirror and the cover.
4. Remove the defective bulb and replace it with a new one.
5. To reinstall the mirror, begin by pressing the three lugs at the upper edge of the mirror back into place.

6. Press the three lower lugs back into place.
Replacing fuses
There are relay/fuse boxes located in the engine compartment and the passenger compartment.

If an electrical component fails to function, this may be due to a blown fuse. The easiest way to see if a fuse is blown is to remove it.

To do so:
1. Pull the fuse straight out. If a fuse is difficult to remove, special fuse removal tools are located on the inside of the fuse box covers.
2. From the side, examine the curved metal wire in the fuse to see if it is intact.
3. If the wire is broken, insert a new fuse of the same color and amperage (written on the fuse).

If fuses burn out repeatedly, have the electrical system inspected by a trained and qualified Volvo service technician.

**WARNING**

Never use metal objects or fuses with higher amperage than those stated on the following pages. Doing so could seriously damage or overload the vehicle’s electrical system.
Fuse box in the engine compartment

The fuse box in the engine compartment has positions for 36 fuses.

- Fuses 1–18 are relays/circuit breakers and should only be removed or replaced by an authorized Volvo service technician.
- Fuses 19–36 may be changed at any time when necessary.

Several extra fuses and a fuse removal tool to assist in removing/replacing fuses can be found on the underside of the fuse box cover in the engine compartment.
09 Maintenance and servicing

Fuses

Fuses in the engine compartment

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Ampere</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Coolant fan (radiator)</td>
<td>50A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Power steering</td>
<td>80A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Feed to passenger compartment fuse box</td>
<td>60A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Feed to passenger compartment fuse box</td>
<td>60A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Element, climate unit</td>
<td>80A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Not in use</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>ABS pump</td>
<td>30A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>ABS valves</td>
<td>20A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Engine functions</td>
<td>30A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Climate system blower</td>
<td>40A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Headlight washers</td>
<td>20A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Feed to heated rear window</td>
<td>30A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Starter motor relay</td>
<td>30A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Trailer connector (accessory)</td>
<td>40A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Not in use</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Feed to audio system</td>
<td>30A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Windshield wipers</td>
<td>30A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Feed to passenger compartment fuse box</td>
<td>40A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Not in use</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Horn</td>
<td>15A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Not in use</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>Not in use</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>Engine control module (ECM)/transmission control module (TCM)</td>
<td>10A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fuses</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.</td>
<td>Not in use</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.</td>
<td>Not in use</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.</td>
<td>Ignition switch, 15A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27.</td>
<td>A/C compressor, 10A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28.</td>
<td>Not in use</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29.</td>
<td>Front fog lights (option), 15A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30.</td>
<td>Not in use</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31.</td>
<td>Not in use</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32.</td>
<td>Fuel injectors, 10A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33.</td>
<td>Heated oxygen sensor, vacuum pump, 20A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34.</td>
<td>Ignition coils, climate unit pressure sensor, 10A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35.</td>
<td>Engine sensor valves, A/C relay, relay coil, PTC element oil trap, canister, mass air meter, 15A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36.</td>
<td>Engine control module (ECM), throttle sensor, 10A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
09 Maintenance and servicing

Fuses

Fuse box in the passenger compartment

1. Remove the upholstery covering the fuse box by first pressing in the center pins in the mounting clips approximately 0.5 in (1 cm) with a small screwdriver and then pulling the pins out.

2. Turn both retaining screws (2) counterclockwise until they release.

3. Fold down the fuse box (3) halfway. Pull it toward the seat until it stops. Fold it down completely. The fuse box can be unhooked completely.

4. Replace the blown fuse.

5. Close the fuse box in reverse order.

6. Pull the center pins fully out of the mounting clips, secure the upholstery with the mounting clips and press the pins into the mounting clips again. The mounting clips then expand, holding the upholstery in position.

The fuse box in the passenger compartment is located under the glove compartment.

To access the fuses:

1. Remove the upholstery covering the fuse box by first pressing in the center pins in the mounting clips approximately 0.5 in (1 cm) with a small screwdriver and then pulling the pins out.

2. Turn both retaining screws (2) counterclockwise until they release.

3. Fold down the fuse box (3) half way. Pull it toward the seat until it stops. Fold it down completely. The fuse box can be unhooked completely.

4. Replace the blown fuse.

5. Close the fuse box in reverse order.
### Fuses in the passenger compartment

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Protection</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>Not in use</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>Not in use</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>Not in use</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>Not in use</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>Not in use</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>Not in use</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>Audio system, Volvo Navigation system (option)</td>
<td>15A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>Supplemental Restraint System (SRS), engine control module</td>
<td>10A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>12-volt socket in rear seat</td>
<td>15A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>Lighting – glove compartment, instrument panel, and footwells</td>
<td>5A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
<td>Interior lighting</td>
<td>5A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>Tailgate window wiper/washer</td>
<td>15A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49</td>
<td>Supplemental Restraint System (SRS), Occupant Weight Sensor (OWS)</td>
<td>10A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>Not in use</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51</td>
<td>AWD, fuel filter relay</td>
<td>10A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52</td>
<td>Transmission control module (TCM), ABS</td>
<td>5A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53</td>
<td>Power steering</td>
<td>10A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>Park assist (option) Bi-Xenon® headlights (option)</td>
<td>10A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>Not in use</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Fuses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Ampere</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>56.</td>
<td>Volvo Navigation System remote control module (option), alarm siren control module</td>
<td>10A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57.</td>
<td>On-board diagnostic socket, brake light switch</td>
<td>15A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58.</td>
<td>Right high beam, auxiliary lights relay</td>
<td>7.5A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59.</td>
<td>Left high beam</td>
<td>7.5A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60.</td>
<td>Heated driver’s seat (option)</td>
<td>15A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61.</td>
<td>Heated passenger’s seat (option)</td>
<td>15A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62.</td>
<td>Moonroof (option)</td>
<td>20A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63.</td>
<td>Power window and door lock – rear passenger’s side door</td>
<td>20A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64.</td>
<td>Audio system, Volvo Navigation system (option)</td>
<td>5A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65.</td>
<td>Audio system</td>
<td>5A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66.</td>
<td>Audio system control module (ICM), climate system</td>
<td>10A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>67.</td>
<td>Not in use</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68.</td>
<td>Cruise control</td>
<td>5A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69.</td>
<td>Climate system, rain sensor (option), BLIS button (option)</td>
<td>5A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70.</td>
<td>Not in use</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71.</td>
<td>Not in use</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72.</td>
<td>Not in use</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73.</td>
<td>Moonroof, front ceiling lighting, auto-dim mirror, (option) seat belt reminder</td>
<td>5A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74.</td>
<td>Fuel pump relay</td>
<td>15A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75.</td>
<td>Not in use</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>76.</td>
<td>Not in use</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>77.</td>
<td>Auxiliary equipment control module (AEM)</td>
<td>15A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78.</td>
<td>Not in use</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>79.</td>
<td>Back-up lights</td>
<td>5A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80.</td>
<td>Not in use</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>81.</td>
<td>Power window and door lock – rear driver’s side door</td>
<td>20A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>82.</td>
<td>Power window – front passenger’s side door</td>
<td>25A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83.</td>
<td>Power window and door lock – front driver’s side door</td>
<td>25A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84.</td>
<td>Power passenger’s seat</td>
<td>25A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>85.</td>
<td>Power driver’s seat</td>
<td>25A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>86.</td>
<td>Interior lighting relay, cargo area light, power seats</td>
<td>5A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section</td>
<td>Page</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio functions</td>
<td>240</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radio functions</td>
<td>244</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD player/CD changer</td>
<td>249</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio menu</td>
<td>253</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bluetooth® hands-free connection</td>
<td>254</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
AUDI0
10 Audio

Audio functions

Audio system controls

1 VOLUME dial
2 AM/FM – select a radio band
3 MODE – select a sound source
4 TUNING dial
5 SOUND button

Selecting a sound source
- Press AM/FM (2) repeatedly to toggle between FM1, FM2, and AM.
- Press MODE (3) repeatedly to toggle between the CD player and the optional external sound source AUX or the optional Sirius satellite radio.

The currently selected sound source will be shown in the display.

AUX
The AUX (auxiliary) port, located under the center armrest, can be used to connect for example, an mp3 player.

Auxiliary connector

If the player is being charged through a 12-volt socket while it is connect to the AUX port, sound quality may be impaired.

The volume of the external sound source AUX may be different from the volume of the internal sound sources such as the CD player or the radio. If the external sound source’s volume is too high, the quality of the sound may be impaired.

This can be prevented by adjusting the external sound source’s input volume.

1. While playing the radio or a CD, lower the audio volume to about one-quarter.
2. Switch to AUX mode on the audio system by pressing the MODE button.
3. Connect the headphone output from your music player to the AUX input using a cable with a stereo 3.5 mm miniplug at both ends.
4. Set your music player’s headphone volume to three-quarters using the player’s volume controls.
5. Press MENU on the audio system, and navigate to AUX Volume or AUX Input Volume.
6. Turn the volume knob to raise or lower the AUX Input Volume until you hear music at a comfortable level.
7. If there is distortion, lower your music player’s headphone volume until the distortion goes away.

8. Finally, exit the menu and adjust the audio volume to a comfortable level.

**Volume**

Use the volume dial (1) or the buttons in the steering wheel keypad to adjust the volume level. The volume level is also adjusted automatically according to the vehicle’s speed, see page 243 for more information on this function.

**Steering wheel keypad**

The four buttons on the steering wheel keypad can be used to control the audio system. The steering wheel keypad can be used to adjust volume, shift between preset stations and change CD tracks. Press one of the two left-hand buttons briefly to change to the next/previous preset radio station, or to go to the next/previous track on a CD. Press and hold down these buttons to search within a track on a CD.

**Daytime/twilight display**

In daylight the information is displayed against a light background. In darkness it is displayed against a dark background.

**USB/iPod connector (option)**

An auxiliary device, such as an iPod, MP3 player or a USB flash drive can be connected to the audio system via the connector in the center console storage compartment. A standard cable from an iPod or MP3 player can be routed under the cover to the AUX connector in the storage compartment.

A sound source must be chosen, depending on the device that has been connected:

1. Use **MODE** to select iPod or USB. The text **CONNECT DEVICE** will be displayed.
2. Connect the device to the connector in the center console storage compartment (see the illustration).

The text **LOADING** will be displayed while the system loads the files (folder structure) on the device. This may take a short time.

When information about the files (the folder structure) on the device has been loaded, the resulting list includes information on the artist, genre and song title.

To navigate in the folder structure, press **ENTER** and scroll up and down the folders using the arrow buttons (on the audio system control panel or on the steering wheel keypad). Press the right arrow button to select a folder. Press the left arrow button to go up a level in the folder structure. Press **ENTER** to go down a level in the folder structure.
Audio functions

Tracks can be selected in two ways:
- Turn the Tuning knob (no. 4 in the illustration on page 244) clockwise or counter-clockwise
- Use the right or left arrow keys on the navigation control (no. 5 in the illustration on page 244) to select the desired track. The arrow keys on the steering wheel keypad can also be used in the same way.

NOTE

The system supports playback of files in the most common versions of formats such as mp3, wma, and wav. However, there may be versions of these formats that the system does not support.

USB flash drive
To simplify the use of a USB flash drive, it is advisable to only store music files on the drive. It will take considerably longer for the system to index the files on the drive if it contains anything other than compatible music files.

MP3 player
Many mp3 players have a file indexing system that is not supported by the vehicle’s audio system. In order to use an mp3 player, the system must be set to USB Removable device/Mass Storage Device.

iPod
An iPod receives current and its battery is charged through the connecting cord. However, if the iPod’s battery is completely drained, it should be recharged before the iPod is connected to the audio system.

NOTE

When an iPod is used as a sound source, the vehicle’s audio system has a menu structure similar to the one in the iPod. See the iPod's manual for detailed information.

For further information, refer to the accessory manual USB/iPod Music Interface.

Sound settings

Optimal sound reproduction
The audio system is calibrated for optimal sound reproduction through the use of digital signal processing. This calibration takes into account the speakers, amplifier, cabin acoustics, the seating position of the listener, etc., for each combination of vehicle and audio system. There is also dynamic calibration that takes into account the setting of the volume control, radio reception, and the vehicle’s speed. The sound settings described in this manual, such as BASS, TREBLE, and EQUALIZER are only intended to enable the user to adapt sound reproduction to his/her personal preferences.

1. Press SOUND (5). Press this button repeatedly until you come to the setting that you wish to change.
2. Turn the TUNING dial (4) to make the desired setting.

The following settings can be made:
- BASS—set the bass level
- TREBLE—set the treble level
- BALANCE—set the left/right sound balance
- FADER—set the front/rear sound balance
- SUBWOOFER (accessory)—set the level for the subwoofer (bass speaker)
- CENTER—make settings for the center speaker
- SURROUND—make settings for surround sound

Subwoofer (accessory)
To switch the subwoofer on or off:
1. Press MENU followed by ENTER.
2. Select AUDIO SETTINGS and press ENTER.
3. Select SUBWOOFER and press ENTER.
Surround sound

Surround sound settings are used to balance sound levels throughout the vehicle. Surround settings for the various sound sources are made separately.

NOTE
- Dolby Surround Pro Logic II is only available on the Premium Sound system.
- When listening to FM radio stations, Dolby Surround Pro Logic II functions best in areas with strong reception. If reception is weak, selecting 2 or 3-channel stereo may provide better sound quality.

The Dolby symbol will be appear in the display when Dolby Pro Logic II is activated.

There are three alternative settings:
- Pro Logic II
- 3-channel
- Off (normal 2-channel stereo)

Activating/deactivating Surround sound
1. Press MENU followed by ENTER.
2. Select AUDIO SETTINGS in the menu and press ENTER.
4. Select Pro Logic II, 3-channel stereo or Off and press ENTER.

Equalizer Front/Rear
This function is used to fine-tune the sound level for different frequencies separately.

NOTE
This function is only available on certain sound systems.

To adjust the equalizer settings:
1. Press MENU followed by ENTER.
2. Select AUDIO SETTINGS in the menu and press ENTER.
3. Select Equalizer Front/Rear and press ENTER.

The column in the display indicates the sound level for the current frequency.
- Adjust the level with the TUNING dial (4), or use the Up/Down arrows. Additional frequencies can be selected with the Right/Left arrows.
- Save the settings by pressing ENTER or exit without saving by pressing EXIT.

Automatic sound control
The audio system’s volume is adjusted automatically according to the speed of the vehicle. There are three settings available, which determine the level of volume compensation:
- Low
- Medium
- High

To set the automatic sound level:
1. Press MENU followed by ENTER.
2. Select AUDIO SETTINGS in the menu and press ENTER.
3. Select AUTO. VOLUME CONTROL in the menu and press ENTER.
4. Select Low, Medium, or High and press ENTER.

1 Default setting.
Radio functions

Radio function controls

1. **AM/FM1/FM2** selection
2. Station preset buttons
3. **TUNING** dial for selecting radio stations
4. **SCAN**
5. **MENU NAVIGATION CONTROL**—press the up or down arrow keys to scroll in a menu, or the keys on the left/right sides of the control to search for or change radio stations/CD tracks
6. **EXIT**—press to cancel a menu selection or a selected function
7. **AUTO**—search for and store the strongest radio stations in the area in which you are driving

**Searching for stations**
There are two ways to manually tune a radio station:
1. Turn the **TUNING** dial (3) to the desired frequency.
2. Press the left or right arrow key on the **MENU NAVIGATION CONTROL** and hold it down. The radio scans slowly in the selected direction and will increase the scanning speed after a few seconds. Release the button when the desired frequency appears in the display.

The frequency can be fine-tuned by short presses on the left/right arrow keys.

**Storing preset stations**

**Manually storing a station**
1. Tune to the desired station.
2. Press and hold the preset button under which the station is to be stored. The audio system sound will be interrupted for a few seconds and **STATION STORED** will appear in the display.

**Automatically storing a station**
Pressing **AUTO** (7) automatically searches for and stores up to ten strong AM or FM stations in a separate memory. If more than ten stations are found, the ten strongest ones are stored. This function is especially useful in areas in which you are not familiar with radio stations or their frequencies.

To use the **AUTO** function:
1. Select a waveband using the **AM/FM** button (1).
2. Start the search by pressing **AUTO** until **AUTO STORING** appears in the display.

When the search is completed, **AUTO STORING** will no longer be displayed. If there are no stations with sufficient signal strength, **NO AST FOUND** is displayed.

The auto-stored stations can be selected using the preset buttons (2).

Press **EXIT** (6) to terminate the automatic storing function.

When the radio is in auto-store mode, **AUTO** is shown in the display. **AUTO** disappears when you return to normal radio mode, which can be done by briefly pressing **AM/FM** (1), **EXIT** (6), or **AUTO** (7).
To return to the Auto-store mode, press the AUTO button briefly and select a stored station by pressing one of the preset buttons (2).

**Saving auto-stored stations in the preset memory**

An auto-stored station can be saved in the memory for manually preset stations.

1. Press AUTO (7) briefly.
   > Auto is displayed.
2. Press one of the preset buttons (2) under which the station is to be stored. Hold down the button until STATION STORED is displayed.

The radio will then exit auto-store mode and the stored station can be selected by pressing the preset button.

**Scanning**

SCAN (4) automatically searches through the selected waveband for strong AM or FM stations. When the radio finds a station, that station will be played for approximately 8 seconds, after which scanning resumes.

**Activating/deactivating SCAN**

1. Select radio mode using the AM/FM button (2).

2. Press SCAN to activate the function. SCAN is shown in the display.
3. Press the SCAN or EXIT button to deactivate the scan function and listen to the selected station.

**Storing a station found with SCAN**

A station can be stored as a preset while the SCAN function is activated.

1. Press one of the preset buttons (2) under which the station is to be stored. Hold down the button until STATION STORED is displayed.

The SCAN function will be deactivated and the station can be selected by pressing the preset button.

**Radio text**

Certain stations broadcast program information, which can be shown in the display.

To start this function:

1. Select FM1 or FM2 and press the MENU button.
2. Press ENTER.
3. Select RADIOTEXT in the menu and press ENTER.

To deactivate this function, select RADIOTEXT again and press ENTER.

**Listening to satellite radio**

The Sirius satellite system consists of a number of high elevation satellites in geosynchronous orbit.

**NOTE**

- The digital signals from the Sirius satellites are line-of-sight, which means that physical obstructions such as bridges, tunnels, etc. may temporarily interfere with signal reception.
- Avoid any obstructions, such as metallic objects transported on roof racks or in a ski box, or other antennas that may impede signals from the SIRIUS satellites.

**Selecting Sirius radio mode**

1. Press Power to switch on the audio system (see page 244 for information on the standard radio functions).
2. Press the MODE button repeatedly until Sirius 1 or 2 is displayed.

**Activating Sirius radio**

1. Tune to a satellite channel that has no audio, which means that the channel is unsubscribed and the text "Call 888-539-SIRIUS TO SUBSCRIBE" is displayed.
Radio functions

(see also “Selecting a channel” in the right column).

2. Call Sirius at 1-888-539-SIRIUS (7474).
3. When asked for the Sirius ID number press\nAUTO to display this number. It is also\npossible to retrieve the Sirius ID from the\nMENU.
4. "UPDATING SUBSCRIPTION" will be\ndisplayed while the subscription is being\nupdated, after which the display will return\nto the normal view.

SIRIUS ID
The SIRIUS ID is required when contacting the\nSirius Call Center. It is used to activate your\naccount and when making any account trans-
actions. The SIRIUS ID is sometimes referred\nto as the Electronic Serial Number (ESN).

Selecting a channel category
1. Select Sirius radio mode as described\nabove.
2. Press ENTER.
3. Use the up/down arrow keys to scroll\nthrough the list of categories.
4. Press ENTER or the right arrow key to\nselect a category.
5. Use the left or right arrow keys to select a\nchannel in the currently chosen category.
6. Press ENTER to listen to a channel.

NOTE
- The category "All" is default, which ena-
bles you to scroll through the entire list of\navailable satellite channels.
- The channel categories are automati-
cally updated several times a year. This\ntakes approximately two minutes and\nwill interrupt normal broadcasting. A\nmessage will be displayed while updat-
ing is in progress. Information on chan-
nel or feature updates is available at\nwww.sirius.com.

Selecting a channel
There are three ways of tuning in a channel:
- Using the left and right arrow keys
- By turning the tuning control
- Through direct channel entry

Direct channel entry
The Sirius satellite channels are numbered\nconsecutively throughout all of the categories.\nTo access a channel directly:

1. Press MENU and scroll to "Direct channel\nentry."
2. Use the numerical keypad to enter the\nchannel's number.
3. Press ENTER. The radio will tune to this\nchannel, even if it belongs to a category\nother than the currently selected one.

NOTE
- The numbers of skipped or locked\nchannels will not be displayed.
- If a channel is locked, the access code\nmust be entered before the channel can\nbe selected. See “Unlocking a channel”\non page 247.

Scanning

NOTE
SCAN automatically searches through the\nlist of satellite channels. see page 245 for\nmore detailed information.

Storing a channel
- A long press on one of the number keys\nstores the currently tuned channel on that\nkey.
- A short press on a number key while the\nradio is in Sirius 1 or 2 mode will tune to the
preset satellite channel stored on that but- 
tton, regardless of the currently selected 
channel category.

Song Seek and Song Memory
The Song Seek and Song Memory functions 
provide both audio and visual notification when 
Sirius is broadcasting your favorite songs. 
Song Seek enables you to store the name of 
the song for future advance notification when 
that song is being played. The Song Memory 
feature makes it possible to view all of the cur-
rent songs that are stored in memory. 

Song memory
Up to ten songs can be saved in the system's 
memory.
1. Press MENU.
2. Scroll to "Add song to song mem." and 
follow the instructions shown in the dis-
play.
If a new song is selected when the memory is 
full, you will be prompted to press ENTER to 
delete the last song on the list.

NOTE
The remaining songs in the list will move 
down one position, and the newly added 
song will be placed at the top of the list.

Song seek
When a satellite radio channel plays one of 
the songs stored in the song memory, the listener 
will be alerted by a text message and an audi-
ble signal.
- Press ENTER to listen to the song or 
EXIT to cancel.
To activate/deactivate the song seek function:
1. Press MENU
2. Scroll to "Song seek"
3. Press ENTER to activate or deactivate the 
function.

NOTE
When the song has ended, the radio will 
remain tuned to the channel on which the 
song was played.

Radio text
The text that is displayed about the song that 
is currently playing can be changed. Use the 
AUTO button or the menu to display the Artist, 
Title, Composer, or switch radio text off.

Advanced settings
This menu function enables you to make set-
tings on certain Sirius satellite radio functions. 
To access this menu:
1. Press MENU.
2. Scroll to Sirius menu.

WARNING
Settings should be made when the vehicle is 
at a standstill.

The following settings can be made in the Sir-
lius menu.
- Songs can be added to the song list
- Channel skip settings can be made
- Channel lock settings can be made
- The channel access code can be displayed 
or changed
- Your Sirius ID can be displayed

Skip options
This function is used to remove a channel from 
the list of available channels.

Skip current
1. Select CHANNEL SKIP LIST and press 
ENTER.
10 Audio

Radio functions

2. Select a category in the list and press ENTER.
3. Skip channels in the list presented by pressing ENTER or right arrow key.

Unskip all channels
This permanently removes all channels from the skip list and makes them available for selection.

Temp. unskip all ch.
This function will temporarily unskip all channels and make them available for selection. The channels remain on the skip list and will again be skipped the next time the ignition is switched on.

Channel lock
Access to specific channels can be restricted (locked). A locked channel will not provide audio, song titles, or artist information.

NOTE
All channels are initially unlocked.

Locking a channel
1. Select “Sirius ID” in the menu and select LOCK OPTIONS and press ENTER.
2. Select CHANNEL LOCK LIST and press ENTER.
3. Enter the channel access code and press ENTER.
4. Select a category in the list and press ENTER.
5. Lock channels in the list presented by pressing ENTER or right arrow.

Unlocking a channel:
A channel’s access code is required to unlock a channel.

Unlock all channels
This permanently removes all channels from the locked list and makes them available for selection.

Temp. unlock all ch.
This function will temporarily unlock all channels and make them available for selection. The channels remain on the locked list and will again be locked the next time the ignition is switched on.

CHANGE CODE
This function makes it possible to change the channel access code. The default code is 0000.

To change the code:
1. Select CHANGE CODE and press ENTER.
2. Enter the current code and press ENTER.
3. Enter the code and press ENTER.
4. Confirm the new code and press ENTER.

If an incorrect code is entered, the text WRONG CODE! is displayed.

If you have forgotten the access code:
1. Select “SIRIUS ID” in the Sirius settings menu and press ENTER.
2. Press and hold the ENTER button for 2 seconds.
3. The current code will be displayed.

Your Volvo retailer can also provide you with assistance.

SIRIUS ID
This function displays the 12-digit Sirius activation ID.
Playing a CD

Single CD player
Start the CD player by pressing the MODE button (5) and inserting a disc in the slot (4). If there is already a disc inserted, it will begin to play.

CD changer
The CD changer can hold up to six discs.
1. Start the CD changer by pressing the MODE button (5).
2. Select an empty position using the 1 – 6 buttons or the up/down keys on the MENU NAVIGATION CONTROL. The display shows which positions are empty.
3. Insert a disc into the slot (4).

NOTE
- Ensure that INSERT DISC is displayed before inserting a disc.
- If a CD position in the changer containing a disc is selected, and the audio system is in CD mode when it is switched on, the CD will play automatically.

CD eject
Eject from Single CD player
Press the eject button (3) to eject the disc.
Eject from CD changer
This function makes it possible to eject a single disc, or to eject all of the discs in the changer.
- Press the eject button (3) briefly to eject the disc that is currently playing.
- A longer press (more than two seconds) starts the process of ejecting all of the discs in the changer.
10 Audio

CD player/CD changer

NOTE
- The EJECT ALL function can only be used while the vehicle is at a standstill and will be cancelled if the vehicle begins to move.
- For reasons of traffic safety, the ejected CD must be removed within 12 seconds or it will be automatically drawn back into the slot and the CD player will enter pause mode. Press the CD button to restart the disc.

CD Pause
When the audio system volume is turned off completely, the CD player will pause and will resume playing when the volume is turned up again.

Audio files
In addition to playing normal music CDs, the CD player/changer can also play discs containing files in mp3 or wma format.

NOTE
Certain discs that are copy protected cannot be read by the player.

When a disc with audio files is inserted in the player, the player scans the disc’s folders before it begins playing the files. The length of time that this takes depends on the quality of the disc.

Navigating the disc and playing tracks
If a disc with audio files is in the CD player, press ENTER to display a list of folders on the disc.

Use the up and down arrows in the navigation control (see the illustration on page 249) to move among the folders on the disc. Audio files have the symbol and folders containing these files have the symbol. Press ENTER to play a selected folder or a file.

When the music file has been played, the player will continue to play the rest of the files in the current folder. When all of the files in the folder have been played, the player will automatically go to the next folder and play the files in it.

Press the left or right arrow key on the navigation control if the entire name of the current track does not fit in the display.

Changing tracks
Briefly press the left or right arrow keys on the MENU NAVIGATION CONTROL to skip to the previous or next track/file.

NOTE
The TUNING dial (6) (turn clockwise to go to the next track/file, or counterclockwise to go to the previous track/file) or the steering wheel keypad can also be used for this purpose.

Fast forward/back
Press and hold down the left or right arrows keys in the MENU NAVIGATION CONTROL (or the corresponding keys on the optional steering wheel keypad) to search within a track/file or the whole disc. The search continues for as long as the buttons are held down.

Random play
This function plays the tracks/files on a CD (or on all of the CDs if the vehicle is equipped with the optional CD changer) in random order (shuffle).

Activating/deactivating the random function-CD player
If a normal CD is being played:
1. Press MENU followed by ENTER.
2. Select Random and press ENTER.

If a CD with audio files is being played:
1. Press MENU followed by ENTER.
2. Select Random and press ENTER.
CD player/CD changer

Activating/deactivating the random function—CD changer

If a normal CD is being played:
1. Press MENU followed by ENTER.
2. Select Random and press ENTER.
3. Select Single disc or All discs and press ENTER.

If a CD with audio files is being played:
1. Press MENU followed by ENTER.
2. Select Random and press ENTER.
3. Select Single disc or Folder and press ENTER.

NOTE
CD changer only—you can only select the next random track/file on the current disc.

1. Press MENU. Select the menu for relevant sound source and press ENTER.
2. Select Disc text in the menu and press ENTER.
   > If information is stored on the disc, it will now appear in the display.

To deactivate this function, select Disc text in the menu and press ENTER.

Scan
This function plays the first 10 seconds of each track/file on the CD.

Scan function

1. Press SCAN.
2. Press EXIT or SCAN to stop the scan function and listen to an entire track/file.

CD eject
Single CD player
Press the eject button (3) to eject the disc.

CD changer
This function makes it possible to eject a single disc, or to eject all of the discs in the changer.

• Press the eject button (3) briefly to eject the disc that is currently playing.
• A longer press (more than two seconds) starts the process of ejecting all of the discs in the changer.

NOTE
• The Eject all function can only be used while the vehicle is at a standstill and will be cancelled if the vehicle begins to move.
• For reasons of traffic safety, the ejected CD must be removed within 12 seconds or it will be automatically drawn back into the slot and the CD player will enter pause mode. Press the CD button to restart the disc.

Compact disc care
Keep the following in mind when playing/handling compact discs

• Do not put tape or labels on the disc itself. They could become stuck in the player.
• CDR discs can cause listening problems due to the quality of the disc or recording equipment used.
• DualDisc: The audio side of a DualDisc (combined CD/DVD) does not meet CD specifications and may not play in your audio system.
• Keep the discs clean. Wipe them with a soft, clean, lint-free cloth, working from the center outward. If necessary, dampen the cloth with a neutral soap solution. Dry thoroughly before using.
CD player/CD changer

- Never use cleaning spray or antistatic liquid. Use only cleaners specifically made for CDs.
- Use discs of the correct size only (3.5” discs should never be used).
- Volvo does not recommend the use of plastic outer rings on the disc.
- Condensation may occur on discs/optical components of the changer in cold winter weather. The disc can be dried with a clean, lint-free cloth. Optical components in the CD changer may, however, take up to one hour to dry off.
- Never attempt to play a damaged CD.
- When not in use, the discs should be stored in their covers. Avoid storing discs in excessive heat, direct sunlight or in dusty locations.
Audio menu

FM1/FM2 menu
1. RADIO TEXT ON/OFF
2. ADVANCED RADIO SETTINGS
3. AUDIO SETTINGS

AM menu
1. AUDIO SETTINGS

CD menu
1. RANDOM
2. AUDIO SETTINGS

CD changer menu
1. RANDOM
2. DISC TEXT ON/OFF
3. AUDIO SETTINGS

AUX menu
1. AUX VOLUME
2. SOUND SETTINGS
Bluetooth® hands-free connection

Introduction

This option makes it possible to set up a wireless connection between a Bluetooth-enabled cell phone and the vehicle’s audio system. This enables the audio system to function as a hands-free connection and allows you to remote-control a number of the phone’s functions. The microphone used by this system is located in the ceiling console (2). The buttons and other controls on the cell phone can always be used regardless of whether or not the phone is connected to the hands-free system.

NOTE

Not all cell phones are fully compatible with the hands-free system. A list of compatible phones is available at your Volvo retailer or at www.volvocars.com

WARNING

Never use the hands-free feature or any other device in your vehicle in a way that distracts you from the task of driving safely. Distraction can lead to a serious accident.

Getting started

Use the controls in the center console (3) to access, navigate and make selections in the hands-free system’s menus (see page 258).

Activating/deactivating

A short press on the PHONE button in the center console activates the hands-free system. The text TELEPHONE will appear at the top of the display to indicate that the audio system is in telephone mode.

The symbol indicates that the hands-free system is active.

A long press on the PHONE button deactivates the hands-free system and disconnects the cell phone.

Connecting cell phones

The procedure for connecting a cell phone varies, depending on the phone itself, and on whether or not the phone has been previously connected.

If this is the first time the phone is to be connected to the hands-free system, proceed as follows:

Alternative 1–using the vehicle’s menus

1. Activate the cell phone’s Bluetooth® function (refer to the phone’s owner’s manual if necessary) or go to www.volvocars.com
2. Activate the vehicle’s Bluetooth® hands-free system by briefly pressing the PHONE button.
   > Add phone will be displayed. If one or more cell phones are already registered in the system, they will also be displayed.
3. Select Add phone.
The audio system will search for cell phones that are in range. This search takes approximately 30 seconds. Any phones detected will be displayed with their Bluetooth® names. The hands-free system’s Bluetooth® name will appear in the cell phone’s display as My Car.

1. Select one of the cell phones shown in the audio system’s (center console) display.
2. Using the cell phone’s keypad, enter the digits shown in the audio system’s display.

Alternative 2–using the cell phone’s menus

1. Activate the hands-free system by briefly pressing the PHONE button in the center console. If there is a cell phone connected, disconnect it from the hands-free system (by pressing PHONE in the center console for several seconds).
2. Perform a search using the cell phone’s Bluetooth® function (consult the cell phone’s owner’s manual if necessary).
3. Select My Car in the list of devices shown in the cell phone’s display.
4. When prompted, enter the PIN code 1234 in the cell phone.
5. Connect to My Car from the cell phone.

The cell phone will be registered and will be connected automatically to the audio system while the text Synchronising is displayed. For more information on synchronizing a cell phone, see page 257.

When a connection has been established, the symbol and the cell phone’s Bluetooth® name will be displayed. The cell phone can now be controlled from the audio system.

Making a call

1. Ensure that TELEPHONE is shown at the top of the center console display and that the symbol is visible (by pressing briefly on PHONE on the center console).
2. Dial the desired phone number or use the phone book (see page 257).
3. Press ENTER.
4. When prompted, enter the PIN code 1234 in the cell phone.
5. Connect to My Car from the cell phone.

The cell phone will be registered and will be connected automatically to the audio system while the text Synchronising is displayed. For more information on synchronizing a cell phone, see page 257.

When a connection has been established, the symbol and the cell phone’s Bluetooth® name will be displayed. The cell phone can now be controlled from the audio system.

Making a call

1. Ensure that TELEPHONE is shown at the top of the center console display and that the symbol is visible (by pressing briefly on PHONE on the center console).
2. Dial the desired phone number or use the phone book (see page 257).
3. Press ENTER.
4. When prompted, enter the PIN code 1234 in the cell phone.
5. Connect to My Car from the cell phone.

The cell phone will be registered and will be connected automatically to the audio system while the text Synchronising is displayed. For more information on synchronizing a cell phone, see page 257.

When a connection has been established, the symbol and the cell phone’s Bluetooth® name will be displayed. The cell phone can now be controlled from the audio system.

Making a call

1. Ensure that TELEPHONE is shown at the top of the center console display and that the symbol is visible (by pressing briefly on PHONE on the center console).
2. Dial the desired phone number or use the phone book (see page 257).
3. Press ENTER.
4. When prompted, enter the PIN code 1234 in the cell phone.
5. Connect to My Car from the cell phone.

The cell phone will be registered and will be connected automatically to the audio system while the text Synchronising is displayed. For more information on synchronizing a cell phone, see page 257.

When a connection has been established, the symbol and the cell phone’s Bluetooth® name will be displayed. The cell phone can now be controlled from the audio system.

Handling calls

Incoming calls

Press ENTER to answer a call, even if the audio system is currently in e.g., CD or FM mode. Press EXIT to defer a call.

Automatic answer

This function means that incoming calls will be answered automatically. Activate or deactivate the function in the menu system under Phone settings ➔ Call options ➔ Automatic answer.

NOTE

Certain cell phones may require confirmation from the phone’s keypad when a call is transferred from hands-free to the cell phone.
10 Audio

Bluetooth® hands-free connection

Call settings
While a call is in progress, press MENU or ENTER on the center console to access the following functions:
- Microphone off—mute the audio system’s microphone.
- Transfer call to mobile—transfer the call from hands-free to the cell phone.
- Phone book—this feature enables you to search for a stored telephone number.

**NOTE**
- On certain cell phones, the connection is broken when the mute function is used, which is normal. If this happens, the hands-free system will prompt you to reconnect.
- A new call cannot be initiated while another call is in progress.

Sound settings

Call volume
Call volume can be adjusted when the hands-free system is activated. Use the buttons in the steering wheel keypad or the audio system’s volume control.

Audio system volume
While a phone call is in progress, volume for the audio system can be adjusted in the normal way with the audio system’s volume control. In order to adjust volume during a phone call, the audio system must be switched to one of the other modes (FM, CD, etc).

Audio system sound can be automatically muted when a phone call is received in Phone settings ➔ Sounds and volume ➔ Mute radio and adjust the volume with the ▲ / ▼ keys on the center console.

Ringing volume
Go to Phone settings ➔ Sounds and volume ➔ Ring volume and adjust the volume with the ▲ / ▼ keys on the center console.

Ringing tones
The hands-free system’s integrated ringing tones can be selected in Phone settings ➔ Sounds and volume ➔ Ring signal ➔ Ring signal 1,2,3....

**NOTE**
- The connected cell phone’s ring tone is not switched off when one of the hands-free system’s ringing tones is used.

If you prefer to use the connected cell phone’s ring tone, go to Phone settings ➔ Sounds and volume ➔ Ring signal ➔ Use mobile phone signal

More information about registering and connecting cell phones
A maximum of 5 cell phones can be registered in the hands-free system. Registration only needs to be done once for each phone. After registration, the cell phone no longer needs to be in sight or searchable. Only one cell phone can be connected to hands-free at a time. Phones can be unregistered in Bluetooth ➔ Remove telephone

Automatic connection
When the hands-free system is active and the most recently connected cell phone is within range, it is detected automatically. When the

---

1 Not supported by all cell phones
audio system searches for the most recently connected phone, this phone's name appears in the display. To manually connect a different cell phone, press EXIT.

**Manual connection**

To connect a phone other than the one that was most recently connected or to switch between cell phones that are already registered in the hands-free system:

1. Put the audio system in telephone mode.
2. Press PHONE in the center console and select one of the phones on the list.

A connection can also be established in the menu system under Bluetooth ➔ Connect phone or Change phone.

**Phone book**

In order to use the hands-free system’s phone book (list of contacts), TELEPHONE must be displayed at the top of the center console display and the symbol must be visible.

The audio system stores a copy of the phone book of each registered cell phone. The phone book is automatically copied each time a phone is connected. This function can be activated in Phone settings ➔ Synchronise phone book. Searches for contacts are only made in the phone book of the currently connected cell phone.

---

**Voice control**

If the cell phone that is currently connected allows calls to be made via voice commands, this function can be used by pressing and holding ENTER.

**Voice mail number**

The phone number to your voice mail can be changed in the menu Phone settings ➔ Call options ➔ Voice mail number. If no number has been stored, this menu can be accessed by a prolonged press on button 1. Once a phone number has been stored, press and hold 1 to dial this number.

**Call lists**

Lists of calls in a particular cell phone are copied to the hands-free system each time that phone is connected. These lists are then updated while the phone is connected. Press ENTER to show the most recently dialed numbers. Other call lists can be found under Call register.

---

**Searching for contacts**

The easiest way to search for a contact in the phone book is to press and hold any of the buttons 2–9. This starts a search based on the first letter on the button that has been pressed.

The phone book can also be accessed by pressing the navigation buttons ▼/▲ on the center console or by pressing ◀/▶ on the steering wheel keypad. A search can also be made in the phone book’s search menu in Phone book ➔ Search:

1. Enter the first letter of the contact’s name and press ENTER or simply press ENTER.
2. Select the desired contact and press ENTER to make a call to that person.

---

**NOTE**

If the phone book contains information about someone who is trying to call you, this information will be shown in the display.

If a particular cell phone does not support copying of the phone book, List is empty will be displayed when copying has been completed.

---

**NOTE**

Certain cell phones display the list of the most recently dialed numbers in reverse order.
**10 Audio**

### Bluetooth® hands-free connection

**Entering text**
Text is entered by using the number buttons in the center console. Press a button once to enter the first letter on the button, twice to enter the second letter, etc. Continue to press the button to display other characters.

Press **EXIT** briefly to erase a character. Press and hold **EXIT** to erase all of the characters that have been entered. Use the ▲/▼ buttons on the center console to navigate among the characters.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Button</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Space .!?:,”' ()</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>ABC Ä Å Æ Ç</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>DEF Ê É</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>GHI Ì</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>JKL Ï</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>MNO Ñ Ò Ø</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>PQRS 78</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Button</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>TUV Ÿ Ü</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>WXYZ 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUTO</td>
<td>Press briefly if two characters are to be entered in succession from the same button.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>+ 0 @ * # &amp; $ %</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCAN</td>
<td>Shift between uppercase and lowercase letters</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Button</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Missed calls</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Received calls</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Dialed calls</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Phone book</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.1</td>
<td>Search</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.2</td>
<td>Copy fr. mobile phone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Bluetooth...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.1</td>
<td>Change phone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.2</td>
<td>Connect phone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3</td>
<td>Disconnect phone</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.4  Connect fr. mobile phone

**6. Phone settings**
- 6.1. Call options
  - 6.1.2. Automatic answer
  - 6.1.3. Voice mail number
- 6.2. Sounds and volume
- 6.3. IDIS
- 6.4. Synchronize phone book
Label information................................................................. 262
Dimensions and weights..................................................... 264
Fuel, oils, and fluids............................................................ 267
Engine oil.............................................................................. 269
Engine specifications............................................................ 270
Electrical system................................................................... 272
Three-way catalytic converter.............................................. 274
Volvo programs..................................................................... 275
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>kg</th>
<th>426-20</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kg</td>
<td>33AB6352985</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
11 Specifications

Label information

1 Model plate
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN). Codes for color and upholstery, etc.

2 Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards (FMVSS) specifications (USA) and Ministry of Transport (CMVSS) standards (Canada)
Your Volvo is designed to meet all applicable safety standards, as evidenced by the certification label on the facing side of the driver's door. For further information regarding these regulations, please consult your Volvo retailer.

3 Loads and Tire Pressures
The appearance of the decal will vary, depending on the market for which the vehicle is intended.
Canadian models have the upper decal
U.S. models have the lower decal.

4 Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)¹
The VIN plate is located on the top left surface of the dashboard. The VIN is also stamped on the right hand door pillar.

5 Vehicle Emission Control Information
Your Volvo is designed to meet all applicable emission standards, as evidenced by the cer-

¹ The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) should always be quoted in correspondence concerning your vehicle with the retailer and when ordering parts.
### Dimensions and weights

#### Dimensions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Position</th>
<th>Dimension</th>
<th>in. (mm)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Wheelbase</td>
<td>103.9 in. (264 cm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Length</td>
<td>177.7 in. (451 cm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Load length, floor, seatback down</td>
<td>69.7 in. (177 cm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Load length, floor</td>
<td>39 in. (99 cm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>Height</td>
<td>57.2 in. (145 cm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>Track, front</td>
<td>60.4 in. (154 cm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>Track, rear</td>
<td>60.3 in. (153 cm)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Dimensions and weights

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Position</th>
<th>Dimension</th>
<th>in. (mm)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>Width</td>
<td>69.7 in. (177 cm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Width encl. door mirrors</td>
<td>79.6 in. (202 cm)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Weights

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>USA</th>
<th>Canada</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gross vehicle weight</td>
<td>FWD(^{A}): 4320 lbs</td>
<td>1960 kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>FWD Turbo: 4320 lbs</td>
<td>1960 kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AWD(^{B}) Turbo: 4450 lbs</td>
<td>2020 kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capacity weight</td>
<td>FWD: 800 lbs</td>
<td>365 kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AWD: 800 lbs</td>
<td>365 kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Permissible axle weight, front</td>
<td>FWD: 2380 lbs</td>
<td>1080 kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>FWD Turbo: 2380 lbs</td>
<td>1080 kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AWD Turbo: 2420 lbs</td>
<td>1100 kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Permissible axle weight, rear</td>
<td>FWD: 2220 lbs</td>
<td>1010 kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>FWD Turbo: 2220 lbs</td>
<td>1010 kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AWD Turbo AWD: 2220 lbs</td>
<td>1010 kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Curb weight</td>
<td>FWD: 3265–3345 lbs</td>
<td>1450–1515 kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AWD: 3470–3500 lbs</td>
<td>1565–1590 kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max. roof load</td>
<td>All models: 165 lbs</td>
<td>All models: 75 kg</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## 11 Specifications

### Dimensions and weights

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>USA</th>
<th>Canada</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Max. trailer weight (w/o brakes)</td>
<td>All models: 1540 lbs</td>
<td>All models: 700 kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max. trailer weight (with brakes)</td>
<td>All models: 2000 lbs</td>
<td>All models: 900 kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max. tongue weight</td>
<td>All models: 165 lbs</td>
<td>All models: 75 kg</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*A FWD = Front Wheel Drive
*B AWD = All Wheel Drive
*C Models equipped with the B6244S7 engine (engine code 39, which is the 6th and 7th digits from the left in your vehicle’s VIN number, see chapter Label information, for the location of the VIN plate), may not be used to tow trailers or vehicles of any kind. This could cause damage to the vehicle’s emission control systems.

**CAUTION**
The maximum permissible axle loads and/or the gross vehicle weight must not be exceeded.

**WARNING**
When adding accessories, equipment, luggage and other cargo to your vehicle, the total capacity weight must not be exceeded.
## Specifications and capacities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Specification</th>
<th>Capacity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fuel tank</td>
<td>Octane rating: unleaded gasoline, minimum octane requirement AKI 87, recommended rating AKI 91 or above.</td>
<td>15.9 US gallons (60 liters)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Models with All Wheel Drive have a tank volume of 15 US gallons (57 liters). Models with engine code 39 have a fuel tank capacity of 14 US gallons (53 liters). This code is the 6th and 7th digits from the left in your vehicle’s VIN number. see page 262 for the location of the VIN plate.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine oil (with filter replacement)</td>
<td>See page 269 for information on engine oil specifications.</td>
<td>6.1 US quarts (5.8 liters)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic transmission oil</td>
<td>Non-turbo engine: JWS 3309</td>
<td>8.19 US quarts (7.75 liters)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual transmission oil</td>
<td>BOT 130</td>
<td>5-speed: 2.2 US quarts (2.1 liters) 6-speed: 2.1 US quarts (2.0 liters) – turbo models</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coolant</td>
<td>Volvo original coolant/antifreeze (50/50 mixture of water and anti-freeze)</td>
<td>10.5 US quarts (10 liters) – models with automatic transmission 10 US quarts (9.5 liters) – models with manual transmission</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brake fluid</td>
<td>DOT 4+ boiling point &gt;536 °F (280 °C), P/N 9437/433</td>
<td>0.63 US quarts (0.6 liters)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power steering fluid</td>
<td>WSS M2C204-A or equivalent</td>
<td>1.3 US quarts (1.2 liters) – system and reservoir combined</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# 11 Specifications

## Fuel, oils, and fluids

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Specification</th>
<th>Capacity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Washer fluid reservoir</td>
<td>Use washer fluid solvent in cold weather conditions.</td>
<td>6.8 US quarts (6.5 liters)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air conditioning system</td>
<td>Refrigerant – R134a</td>
<td>1.2 lbs. (530 grams)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTE**

The transmission oil does not normally need to be changed during the service life of the vehicle. However, it may be necessary to replace the oil if the vehicle is often driven in areas of sustained temperature extremes (hot or cold), when towing a trailer over long distances, for prolonged driving in mountainous areas, or if the vehicle is often driven short distances in temperatures under 40 °F (5 °C).
**Oil specifications**

Engine oil must meet the minimum ILSAC specification GF-4, API SL, or ACEA A1/B1. Lower quality oils may not offer the same fuel economy, engine performance, or engine protection.

Volume: 6.1 US qts (5.8 liters).

Volume between the MIN and Max marks on the dipstick: approximately 1.4 US qts (1.3 liters).

Volvo recommends Castrol. Depending on your driving habits, premium or synthetic oils may provide superior fuel economy and engine protection. Consult your Volvo retailer or a trained and qualified Volvo service technician for recommendations on premium or synthetic oils.

**Oil additives must not be used.**

**NOTE**

Synthetic oil is not used when the oil is changed at the normal service intervals. This oil is only used at customer request, at additional charge. Please consult a trained and qualified Volvo service technician.

**Oil viscosity (stable ambient temperatures)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Temperature (°C)</th>
<th>SAE 5W-30</th>
<th>SAE 0W-40</th>
<th>SAE 5W-30</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-22</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-14</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Operation in hot climates**

When temperatures exceed 104° F (40° C) in your area, Volvo recommends, for the protection of your engine, that you use a heavier weight oil, such as SAE 5W-40 or 0W-40. See the viscosity chart.

**Operation in temperate climates**

Incorrect viscosity oil can shorten engine life. Under normal use when temperatures do not exceed 104° F (40° C), SAE 5W-30 will provide good fuel economy and engine protection. See the viscosity chart.

**Extreme engine operation**

Synthetic oils meeting SAE 0W-30 or 0W-40 and complying with oil quality requirements are recommended for driving in areas of sustained temperature extremes (hot or cold), when towing a trailer over long distances, and for prolonged driving in mountainous areas.

**American Petroleum Institute (API) symbol**

The API Service Symbol "donut" is divided into three parts:

- The upper section describes the oil’s performance level.
- The center identifies the oil’s viscosity.
- The lower section indicates whether the oil has demonstrated energy-conserving properties in a standard test in comparison to a reference oil.
## 11 Specifications

### Engine specifications

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine designation</th>
<th>B5244S4</th>
<th>B5244S7(^A)</th>
<th>B5254T7</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Output(^B)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kW/rps</td>
<td>125/100</td>
<td>123/100</td>
<td>169/83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hp/rpm</td>
<td>168/6000</td>
<td>165/6000</td>
<td>227/5000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Torque</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nm/rps</td>
<td>230/73</td>
<td>230/73</td>
<td>320/25-80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ft. lbs./rpm</td>
<td>170/4400</td>
<td>170/4400</td>
<td>236/1500-4800</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>No. of cylinders</strong></td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Displacement (liters/cubic inches)</strong></td>
<td>2.44/148.6</td>
<td>2.44/148.6</td>
<td>2.52/153.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bore (mm/in.)</strong></td>
<td>83/3.27</td>
<td>83/3.27</td>
<td>83/3.27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Stroke (mm/in.)</strong></td>
<td>90/3.54</td>
<td>90/3.54</td>
<td>93.2/3.67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Compression ratio</strong></td>
<td>10.3:1</td>
<td>10.3:1</td>
<td>9.0:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Spark plugs</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>type</td>
<td>Volvo kit no. 30650843</td>
<td>Volvo kit no. 30650843</td>
<td>Volvo kit no. 30650379</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gap inches/mm</td>
<td>(3x) 0.024 ± 0.004 in./0.6 ± 0.1mm</td>
<td>(3x) 0.024 ± 0.004 in./0.6 ± 0.1mm</td>
<td>0.027 in./0.7mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tightening torque ft. lbs./Nm</td>
<td>22.5 ft. lbs./30 Nm</td>
<td>22.5 ft. lbs./30 Nm</td>
<td>22.5 ft. lbs./30 Nm</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^{A}\) Certain markets

\(^{B}\) The engine specifications for horsepower and torque listed in this table are based on the use of premium fuel.
**Charge air cooler (Intercooler)**
Turbocharged engines employ a turbo-compressor to force air into the engine inlet manifold and a charge air cooler to cool the compressed inlet air. The resulting increase in air flow raises pressure in the intake manifold and increases engine power over that developed by the normally-aspirated engine. The charge air cooler (which resembles a radiator) is located between the turbo-compressor and inlet manifold.

**Fuel system**
The engine is equipped with a multiport fuel injection system.
11 Specifications

Electrical system

General information
12-volt system with voltage controlled generator. Single wire system in which the chassis and engine block are used as conductors, grounded on the chassis.

Battery

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Voltage</th>
<th>12 V</th>
<th>12 V</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cold start capacity (CCA) A</td>
<td>600 A</td>
<td>700 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reserve capacity (RC)</td>
<td>120 min</td>
<td>135 min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capacity (Ah)</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A Models equipped with the High Performance audio system
B Models equipped with the Premium Sound audio system, the Volvo Navigation System and/or keyless drive

If the battery must be replaced, replace it with one with the same cold start capacity and reserve capacity as the original (see the decal on the battery).

WARNING

PROPOSITION 65 WARNING!
Battery posts, terminals, and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the state of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. Wash hands after handling.

Bulbs used in the car

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bulb</th>
<th>Output</th>
<th>Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Low beam headlight</td>
<td>55W</td>
<td>H7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High beam headlight (applies to vehicles with halogen headlights)</td>
<td>55W</td>
<td>H9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 11 Specifications

#### Electrical system

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bulb</th>
<th>Output</th>
<th>Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Extra high beam (models with Active Bi-Xenon® headlights only)</td>
<td>55W</td>
<td>H7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brake light, back-up light, rear fog light</td>
<td>21W</td>
<td>P21W</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turn signal, front/rear (applies to models with halogen headlights)</td>
<td>21W</td>
<td>PY21W</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turn signal, front/rear (models with Active Bi-Xenon® headlights)</td>
<td>24W</td>
<td>P21/5W</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear parking light, side marker light</td>
<td>5W</td>
<td>P21/W5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Footwell lighting, cargo compartment light, license plate lighting</td>
<td>5W</td>
<td>C5W</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vanity mirror</td>
<td>1.2W</td>
<td>Festoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front parking light, side turn signal</td>
<td>5W</td>
<td>W5W</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front fog light (option)</td>
<td>35W</td>
<td>H8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glove compartment light</td>
<td>3W</td>
<td>Festoon</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTE**

For information regarding any other bulbs not mentioned in this section, please contact your Volvo retailer or a trained and authorized Volvo service technician.
Three-way catalytic converter

Three-way catalytic converter –
general information

- Keep your engine properly tuned. Certain engine malfunctions, particularly involving the electrical, fuel or distributor ignition systems, may cause unusually high three-way catalytic converter temperatures. Do not continue to operate your vehicle if you detect engine misfire, noticeable loss of power or other unusual operating conditions, such as engine overheating or backfiring. A properly tuned engine will help avoid malfunctions that could damage the three-way catalytic converter.

- Do not park your vehicle over combustible materials, such as grass or leaves, which can come into contact with the hot exhaust system and cause such materials to ignite under certain wind and weather conditions.

- Excessive starter cranking (in excess of one minute), or an intermittently firing or flooded engine can cause three-way catalytic converter or exhaust system overheating.

- Remember that tampering or unauthorized modifications to the engine, the Electronic Control Module, or the vehicle may be illegal and can cause three-way catalytic converter or exhaust system overheating. This includes:

**NOTE**

Unleaded fuel is required for vehicles with three-way catalytic converters.
Volvo On Call Roadside Assistance
Your new Volvo comes with a four year ON CALL roadside assistance. Additional information, features, and benefits are described in a separate information package in your glove compartment.

If you require assistance, dial:

**American customers:** 1-800-638-6586
(1-800-63-VOLVO)

**Canadian customers:** 1-800-263-0475

Technician certification
In addition to Volvo factory training, Volvo supports certification by the National Institute for Automotive Service Excellence (A.S.E.). Certified technicians have demonstrated a high degree of competence in specific areas. Besides passing exams, each technician must also have worked in the field for two or more years before a certificate is issued. These professional technicians are best able to analyze vehicle problems and perform the necessary maintenance procedures to keep your Volvo at peak operating condition.
1, 2, 3 ...

12-volt sockets................................. 60

A

A/C (air conditioning)......................... 90
ABS (anti-lock brake system)................. 153
Active Bi-Xenon headlights.................... 61
Airbags
  front......................................... 22
  inflatable curtain............................ 30
  side impact.................................. 29
Airbag system.................................. 22
Air conditioning................................ 90
Air distribution table........................ 99
Air vents........................................ 92
Alarm system................................... 130
  turning off sensors........................ 131
All Wheel Drive................................ 152
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS).................. 153
Approach lighting............................. 83
Audio files..................................... 250
  audio functions............................. 240
  automatic sound control.................... 243
  AUX port...................................... 240
  CD changer.................................... 249
  CD player/changer........................... 249
  compact disc care............................ 251
  Dolby Surround Pro Logic II................. 243
  equalizer...................................... 243
  menu settings................................ 253
  radio functions.............................. 244
  selecting a sound source................... 240
  Sirius satellite radio....................... 245
  sound settings................................ 242
  steering wheel keypad........................ 241
  storing radio stations...................... 244
  subwoofer..................................... 242
  USB/iPOD connector.......................... 241
  Auto-dim rearview mirror.................... 77
  Autolock....................................... 82
  Automatic locking retractor.................. 35
  Automatic sound control..................... 243
  Automatic transmission..................... 149
    kickdown.................................... 150
  oil............................................. 267
  shiftlock override........................... 151
  Automatic transmission - Geartronic....... 150
  AUX port...................................... 240
  Axle weight.................................. 183, 265

B

Backrest, rear seat, folding.................... 111
Bass............................................. 242
Battery
  maintenance................................... 221
  remote control, replacing.................. 120
  specifications................................ 272
  warning symbols.............................. 221
Battery – replacing............................ 221
Bi-Xenon headlights......................... 61
Black Box (Vehicle Event Data)............. 210
Blind Spot Information System (BLIS)... 164
Booster cushion
  accessory......................................... 41
Brake fluid...................................... 219, 267
Brake lights..................................... 62
Brake system
  anti-lock brakes (ABS)....................... 153
  emergency brake assistance............... 154
fluid..................................................... 219
general information............................. 153
Bulbs
headlights........................................... 223
list of................................................... 272
Bulbs, replacing....................................... 223

Capacities, fluids..................................... 267
Capacity weight............................... 183, 265
Cargo area
steel grid............................................. 113
Cargo area cover..................................... 113
Cargo area net................................. 114, 115
Catalytic converter, three-way................. 274
CD changer............................................. 249
CD player............................................... 249
Cell phone, hands-free connection............. 254
Central locking system - remote control SEARCH ERROR
Chains...................................................... 186
Changing a wheel.................................... 190
Child restraints
recalls and registration................. 45
Child restraint systems............... 36
booster cushions......................... 41
convertible seats......................... 39
infant seats.......................... 37
ISOFIX/LATCH anchors................. 42
top tether anchors................ 44
Child safety................................. 34
booster cushions......................... 41
child restraint systems................. 36
convertible seats......................... 39
infant seats.......................... 37
Child safety locks........................... 129
Climate system
air distribution.............................. 99
air vents........................................ 92
Electronic Climate Control............. 96
manual climate control............... 93
passenger compartment filter........... 90
refrigerant.......................... 90, 267
Climate system, general information... 90
Clock
setting..................................... 82
Coat hanger................................. 108
Cold weather precautions............... 137
Compact disc care......................... 251
Compass in reareview mirror........... 77
Conserving electrical current............ 138
Convertible seats......................... 39
Coolant............................................. 267
changing................................ 218
checking level of..................... 218
Courtesy lighting............................. 105
Crash mode......................................... 33
Cruise control................................. 68
Cup holders....................................... 107, 109
Curb weight................................. 183, 265

Detachable key blade....................... 120
Detachable trailer hitch............... 162
Dimensions.......................................... 264
Disabling the passenger’s side front air
bag..................................................... 26
Disconnecting the front passenger’s air
bag..................................................... 26
Display................................................. 58
Dolby Pro Logic II (DPL II)............... 243
Door mirrors....................................... 78
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Driving economically</td>
<td>136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Driving through water</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DSTC, stability system</td>
<td>155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Economical driving</td>
<td>136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electrical current – conserving</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electrically operated moonroof</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electronic system</td>
<td>272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD)</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electronic Climate Control</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>air distribution table</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electronic Climate Control (ECC) - option</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emergency brake</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emergency locking retractor</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emergency starting</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emergency towing</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emission inspection readiness</td>
<td>212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine</td>
<td>270</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>specifications</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>starting</td>
<td>144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>starting with keyless drive</td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine compartment overview</td>
<td>215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine oil</td>
<td>216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>changing</td>
<td>216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>checking</td>
<td>216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>specifications</td>
<td>269</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>volumes</td>
<td>267</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Equalizer, audio system</td>
<td>243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eyelets for anchoring loads</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Clean Air Act</td>
<td>210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flat tires</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>changing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>repairing with tire sealing system</td>
<td>192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fluids and oils</td>
<td>267</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FM1/FM2 menu</td>
<td>244</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fog lights</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>front</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rear</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front airbags</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disconnecting passenger’s side airbag</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front fog lights</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front park assist</td>
<td>168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front seats</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>folding backrests</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>manually operated</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>power</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel filler door</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unlocking</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel gauge</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel requirements</td>
<td>140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel tank volume</td>
<td>267</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuses, replacing</td>
<td>230</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gasoline requirements</td>
<td>140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geartronic</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Generator</td>
<td>272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glossary of tire terminology</td>
<td>182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glove compartment</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>locking</td>
<td>127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gross vehicle weight (GVW)</td>
<td>183, 265</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Hand brake (parking brake)...................... 74
Hands-free connection (cell phone) (Cell phone, hands-free connection).......... 254
Hazard warning flashers.......................... 73
Headlights.............................................. 61
Active Bi-Xenon (option).......................... 61
changing bulbs...................................... 223
high and low beams............................... 64
high beam flash..................................... 64
Headlight washers.................................. 70
Head restraints, rear seat......................... 111
High beam flash........................................ 64
High beams.............................................. 64
Home safe lighting................................. 64, 83
Hood, opening........................................ 214
Infant seats............................................. 37
Inflatable Curtain..................................... 30
Inflation pressure..................................... 176
Inflation pressure, checking..................... 177
Inflation pressure table
  Canadian models.................................... 179
  US models.......................................... 178
Information display.................................. 51, 58
messages in.......................................... 58
Information symbol.................................. 53
Inspection, preparing for........................ 212
Inspection readiness............................... 212
Instrument overview................................ 48
Instrument panel..................................... 48, 51
Instrument panel lighting......................... 62
Interior lighting....................................... 105
iPOD connector (audio system).................. 241
LATCH (ISOFIX) anchors............................ 42

Jacket hanger......................................... 108
Jump starting......................................... 159
Key blade.............................................. 120, 124
Keyless drive
  location of antennas (pacemaker warning).................................. 125
  locking and unlocking the vehicle.. 123
  power seat memory.............................. 124
  starting the engine............................. 146
Keylock................................................ 144
Kickdown.............................................. 150
Label information.................................... 262
LATCH (ISOFIX) anchors............................ 42
Lighting panel........................................ 61
Load anchoring eyelets............................ 115
Loading the vehicle
  roof loads........................................ 163
Locking
  from the inside.................................. 127
  glove compartment.............................. 127
Locking the vehicle............................... 123
Locks, child safety............................... 129
### 12 Index

- **Long distance trips** .................................. 138
- **Lug nuts (wheel nuts)** ............................... 188
- **Maintenance** ............................................ 210
  - performed by the owner ............................. 212
- **Manual climate control** .............................. 93
- **Manual transmission** .................................. 147, 148
- **Mirrors** .................................................. 77, 78
- **Model plate** .............................................. 263
- **Moonroof** ................................................... 80
- **Motor oil** ........................................... 216, 269
  - checking............................................. 216
- **Net in cargo area**............................. 114, 115
- **Occupant safety** ....................................... 16
  - weight sensor........................................ 26
- **Octane recommendations** ....................... 140
- **Oil** ............................................................. 216
  - changing............................................. 216
  - checking............................................. 216
- **On Call Roadside Assistance** .................. 275
- **Opening the hood** .................................... 214
- **Owner maintenance** ................................. 212
- **Panel lighting, instrument** ....................... 62
- **Park assist** ............................................... 168
- **Parking brake** .......................................... 74
- **Parking lights** .......................................... 61
- **Passenger’s side front airbag, disabling** .... 26
- **Periodic owner-performed maintenance** .... 212
- **Permissible axle weight** ............................. 183
- **Personal settings** ....................................... 82
- **Power door mirrors** ................................... 78
- **Power front seat** ....................................... 103
  - memory function.................................... 103
- **Power moonroof** ....................................... 80
- **Power steering fluid** .............................. 219
- **Power windows** ........................................ 75
- **Pregnancy, using seat belts during** .......... 19
- **Radio** ...........................................................
  - **Sirius satellite radio** ............................ 245
  - **Radio functions** .................................... 244
  - **Rain sensor - windshield wipers** .......... 71
  - **Rear fog light** .......................................... 62
  - **Rear park assist** ...................................... 168
  - **Rear seat backrests, folding down** ........ 111
  - **Rear seats**
    - center head restraint............................. 111
  - **Rearview mirror** ...................................... 77
    - auto-dim function.................................. 77
  - **Rearview mirror with compass (option)** .... 77
  - **Recalls, child restraints** .................... 45
  - **Refrigerant (A/C system)** .......................... 90, 267
  - **Refueling** .............................................. 142
    - fuel tank volume.................................. 267
  - **Registering child restraints** .................. 45
  - **Remote control** .................................... 118
    - battery replacement........................... 120
functions............................................ 118
key blade............................................. 120
Replacing fuses.................................... 230
Reporting safety defects
  Canada............................................. 17
  USA............................................... 16
Roof loads........................................... 163
Rotating tires....................................... 189
Safety, occupant.................................... 16
Safety defects, reporting
  Canada............................................. 17
  USA............................................... 16
Safety locks, child................................ 129
Seat belt
  reminder.......................................... 19
Seat belts.......................................... 18
Automatic locking retractor/Emergency
  locking retractor............................... 35
buckling.......................................... 18
maintenance....................................... 20
pretensioners..................................... 18
unbuckling........................................... 18
use during pregnancy.......................... 19
Seats, front........................................ 102
Shiftlock
  override.......................................... 151
Side door mirrors............................... 78
Side impact airbags.............................. 29
Side impact protection (SIPS) airbags...... 29
Sirius satellite radio............................ 245
Snow chains........................................ 186
Snow tires.......................................... 186
Sound control, automatic..................... 243
Sound settings, audio system................. 242
Spare tire.......................................... 187
Stability system.................................. 155
  Dynamic Stability Traction Control
    (DSTC)........................................... 155
Starting the engine............................ 144
  with keyless drive.......................... 146
Start inhibitor (immobilizer)................ 118, 144
STC, stability system.......................... 155
Steering wheel
  adjusting......................................... 73
  keypad.......................................... 241
Storage compartments......................... 107
Studded tires.................................... 186
Subwoofer........................................ 242
Sunroof (moonroof)............................. 80
Supplemental restraint system.............. 21
Tachometer........................................ 51
Tailgate wipers.................................. 71, 220
Telephone (cellular), hands-free connection
  (Cell phone, hands-free connection)........ 254
Temporary spare tire........................... 187
Three-way catalytic converter............... 274
Tire inflation..................................... 176
Tire inflation pressure
  Canadian models............................... 179
  US models...................................... 178
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS).... 197
Tires................................................ 174
  age............................................... 175
  changing....................................... 190
  changing from summer to winter.......... 189
  designs......................................... 180
Sound control, automatic..................... 243
Sound settings, audio system................. 242
Spare tire.......................................... 187
Stability system.................................. 155
Dynamic Stability Traction Control
(DSTC)............................................. 155
Starting the engine............................ 144
with keyless drive............................ 146
Start inhibitor (immobilizer)................ 118, 144
STC, stability system.......................... 155
Steering wheel
adjusting.......................................... 73
keypad............................................ 241
Storage compartments......................... 107
Studded tires.................................... 186
Subwoofer........................................ 242
Sunroof (moonroof)............................. 80
Supplemental restraint system.............. 21
Tachometer........................................ 51
Tailgate wipers.................................. 71, 220
Telephone (cellular), hands-free connection
  (Cell phone, hands-free connection)........ 254
Temporary spare tire........................... 187
Three-way catalytic converter............... 274
Tire inflation..................................... 176
Tire inflation pressure
  Canadian models............................... 179
  US models...................................... 178
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS).... 197
Tires................................................ 174
  age............................................... 175
  changing....................................... 190
  changing from summer to winter.......... 189
  designs......................................... 180
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Glossary of Terms</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Improving economy</td>
<td>175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inflation</td>
<td>176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inflation pressure, checking</td>
<td>177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inflation pressure, Canadian models</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inflation pressure, US models</td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Load ratings</td>
<td>177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rotation</td>
<td>177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Snow</td>
<td>186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spare</td>
<td>187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speed ratings</td>
<td>177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Storing</td>
<td>174</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Studded</td>
<td>186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tire pressure monitoring system</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tire sealing system</td>
<td>192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tread wear indicator</td>
<td>175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uniform tire quality grading</td>
<td>185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Winter driving</td>
<td>186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tire sealing system</td>
<td>192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Top tether anchors (child restraint systems)</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Towing a trailer</td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trailer hitch</td>
<td>162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Towing the vehicle</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trailer hitch - detachable</td>
<td>162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trailer towing</td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transmission</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geartronic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shiftlock override</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tread wear indicator</td>
<td>175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treble</td>
<td>242</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trip computer</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trips, long distance</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turn signals</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indicator lights</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uniform Tire Quality Grading</td>
<td>185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle dimensions</td>
<td>264</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle Event Data</td>
<td>210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle loading</td>
<td>183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roof loads</td>
<td>163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle maintenance</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>performed by the owner</td>
<td>212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle towing</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle weights</td>
<td>265</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VIN (Vehicle Identification Number)</td>
<td>263</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Volvo Inflatable Curtain</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Volvo On Call Roadside Assistance</td>
<td>275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warning flashers, hazard</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warning symbol</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warranties</td>
<td>210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Washer fluid</td>
<td>218, 267</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Washer fluid reservoir</td>
<td>215, 218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water, driving through</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weights</td>
<td>265</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wheel nuts</td>
<td>188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wheels</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>changing</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>storing</td>
<td>174</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whiplash Protection System (WHIPS)</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>power</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windshield washer fluid reservoir</td>
<td>215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windshield wiper blades</td>
<td>220</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Windshield wipers................................. 70
  rains sensor..................................... 71
Winter tires.......................................... 186
Wiper blades
  replacing tailgate wiper..................... 220
  replacing windshield wipers.............. 220